

He persisted in disobeying the orders.

He lacks the power of imparting, although he is a good mathematical scholar.

The practice of cramming is rightly regarded as an evil.

It was only a pretext for delaying the matter.

What is there to prevent him from leaving Chennai.

I had the privilege of knowing him intimately.
They were prohibited from entering the village.
I refrained from hurting his feelings.
You were right in suspecting him.
There is little satisfaction in sitting idle.
He has no scruple in begging.
He succeeded in convincing his critics.
He thought of eluding his pursuers. I am tired of writing letters to him.

Note:- Sometimes both constructions are allowable; e.g.

- He was afraid of telling the truth.
- He was afraid to tell the truth.
- He at last got the opportunity of meeting him.
- He at last got the opportunity to meet him.

389. On the other hand, certain words always take the infinitive after them; as,

He advised us to desist from that attempt.
I decline to say anything further.
I expect to meet opposition.
It is hard to get access to him.
He hopes to win the first prize.
We are all inclined to judge of others as we find them.
He intends to compile a Marathi dictionary.

390. Prepositions are sometimes inserted where they are not required; as,
Where have you been to? Here to is not required.]
My eldest son is a boy of about eighteen years old, [Here of is not required.]
After having finished my work I went home. [Here after is not required,]

391. Note that the verbs discuss, order and stress are transitive and therefore they are not followed by prepositions. We discuss a topic (not discuss about a topic), order tea (not order for tea), stress a point (not stress on a. point).

CHAPTER 40

THE CONJUNCTION

392. Read the following sentences:-

1. God made the country and man made the town.
2. Our hoard is little, but our hearts are great
3. She must weep, or she will die.
4. Two and two make four.

In 1, 2 and 3, the Conjunctions join together two sentences. In 4, the Conjunction joins together two words only. [See § 393.]

Def:- A Conjunction is a word which merely joins together sentences, and sometimes words.

393. Conjunctions join together sentences and often make them more compact; thus,

'Balu and Vithal, are good bowlers' is a short way of saying 'Balu is a good bowler and Vithal is a good bowler'. So the man is poor but honest is a contracted way of saying.

'The man is poor but he is honest.

Sometimes, however the conjunction and joins words only as,

Two and two make four.

Hari and Rama are brothers.

Hari and Rama came home together.

Such sentences can not be resolved in two sentences.

394. Conjunctions must be carefully distinguished from Relative pronouns, Relative Adverbs and Prepositions, which are also connecting words.

1. This is the house that Jack built. (Relative Adverb)
2. This is the place where he was murdered (Relative Adverb)
3. Take this and give that. (Conjunction)

In sentence 1, the Relative program that refers to the noun house and also joins the two parts of sentences.

In sentence 2, the Relative Adverb where modifies the verb was murdered and also joins the two parts of the sentence.

In sentence 3, the Conjunction And simply joins the two parts of the sentences; it does no other work.

It will thus be seen that-

Relative Pronouns & Relative Adverb also join but they do more.

Conjunctions merely join: They do no other work.

Observe that a Preposition also joins two words but it does more; it governs a noun or pronoun; as,

He sat beside Rama. He stood behind me.

395. Some Conjunction are used in pairs; as,

Either-or -- Either take it or leave it.

Neither-nor -- It is neither useful nor ornamental.

Both-and -- We both love and honour him

Though-yet (rare in current English) -- Though he is suffering much pain, yet he does not complain.

Whether-or -- I do not care whether you go or stay.

Not only-But also -- Not only he is foolish, but also obstinate.

Conjunctions which are thus used in pairs are called Correlative Conjunctions or merely Correlatives.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

396. When Conjunctions are used as Correlatives, each of the correlated words should be placed immediately before the words to be connected; as,

He visited not only Agra, but also Delhi.

(Not) -- He not only visited Agra, but also Delhi.

397. We use many compound expressions as Conjunctions; these are called Compound Conjunctions.

In order that -- The notice was published in order that all might know the facts.

On condition that -- I will forgive you on condition that you do not repeat the offence.

Even if -- Such an act would not be kind even if it were just.

So that -- He saved some bread so that he should not go hungry on the morrow.

Provided that -- You can borrow the book provided that you return it soon.

As through -- He walks as though he is slightly lame.

Inasmuch as -- I must refuse your request, inasmuch as I believe it unreasonable.

As well as -- Rama as well as Govind was present there.

As soon as -- He took off his coat as soon as he entered the house.

As if -- He looks as if he were weary.

Classes of Conjunctions

398. As we shall see Conjunctions are divided into two classes:

Co-ordinating and Subordinating.

Read the sentence:

Birds fly and fish swim.

The sentence contains two Independent statements or two statements of equal rank or importance. Hence the Conjunction joining together these two statements or clauses of equal rank is called a Coordinating Conjunction ['Co-ordinating' means of equal rank.]

Def:- A Co-ordinating Conjunction joins together clauses of equal rank.

399. The chief Co-ordinating Conjunctions are:-

And, but, for, or, nor, also, either-or, neither-nor.

400. Co-ordinating Conjunctions are of four kinds:

(1) Cumulative or Copulative which merely add one statement to another; as,
We carved not a line, and we raised hot a stone.

(2) Adversative which express opposition or contrast between two statements; as, He is slow, but he is sure. I was annoyed, still I kept quiet. I would come ; only that I am engaged. He was all right; only he was fatigued.

(3) Disjunctive or Alternative which express a choice between two alternatives; as,
She must weep, or she will die.

Either he is mad, or she will die.
Neither a borrower, nor a lender be.

They toil not, neither do they spin.
Walk quickly, else you will not overtake him.

(4) Illative which express an inference; as,
Something certainly fell in: for I heard a splash.
All precautions must have been neglected, for the plague spread rapidly.

401. Any of the Co-ordinating Conjunctions, with the exception of or, nor, may be omitted and its place taken by a comma, semicolon, or colon; as,
Rama went out to play; Hari stayed in to work.

402. Read the sentence:
I read the paper because it interests me.
The sentence contains two statements or clauses one of which, 'because it interests me', is dependent on the other. Hence the Conjunction introducing the dependent or subordinate clause is called a Subordinating Conjunction.

Def:- A Subordinating Conjunction joins a clause to another on, which it depends for its full meaning.

403. The chief Subordinating Conjunctions are:-
After, because, if, that, though, although, till, before, unless, as, when, where, while.

After the shower was over the sun shone out again.
A book's a book, although there is nothing in it.
As he was not there, I spoke to his brother.
He ran away because he was afraid.
Answer the first question before you proceed further.
Take heed ere it be too late.
Except ye repent, you shall all likewise perish.
You will pass if you work hard.
Sentinels were posted lest the camp should be taken by surprise.
Since you say so, I must believe it.
Tell them that I will come.
He finished first though he began late.
Will you wait till I return?
He will not pay unless he is compelled.
I waited for my friend until he came.
When I was younger, I thought so.
I do not know whence he comes.
He found his watch where he had left it.
I do not understand how it all happened.
Make hay while the sun shines.
I shall go whither fancy leads me.
I know not why he left us.

404. The word than is also a Subordinating Conjunction:-

He is taller than I (am tall).

I like you better than he (likes you).

I like you better than (I like) him.

Hari is more stupid than Dhondu (is stupid).

His bark is worse than his bite (is bad).

405. Subordinating Conjunctions may be classified according to their meaning, as follows:-

(1) Time.

I would die before I lied.

No nation can be perfectly well governed till it is competent to govern itself.
Many things have happened since I saw you.
I returned home after he had gone.
Ere he blew three notes, there was a rusting.

(2) Cause or Reason.

My strength is as the strength of ten, because my heart is pure.
Since you wish it, it shall be done.
As he was not there, I spoke to his brother.
He may enter, as he is a friend.

(3) Purpose.

We eat so that we may live.
He held my hand lest I should fall.

(4) Result or Consequence.

He was so tired that he could scarcely stand

(5) Condition.

Rama will go if Hari goes.
Grievances cannot be redressed unless they are known.

(6) Concession.

I will not see him, though he comes.
Though He slay me, yet will I trust Him.
A book's a book, although there's nothing in it.

(7) Comparison.

He is stronger than Rustum [is]

406. Certain words are used both as Prepositions and Conjunctions. [See § 375.]

Preposition -- Conjunction

Stay till Monday -- We shall stay here till you return.

I have not met him since Monday -- We shall go since you desire it.

He died for this country -- I must stay here, for such is my duty.

The dog ran after the cat -- We came after they had left.

Everybody but Govind was present -- He tired, but did not succeed.

He stood before the painting -- Look before you leap.

Exercise in Grammar 94

Point out the Conjunctions in the following sentences, and state whether they are Co-ordinating or Subordinating:-

1. You will not succeed unless you work harder.
2. We arrived after you had gone.

3. I waited till the train arrived.
4. Bread and milk is wholesome food.
5. You will get the prize if you deserve it-
6. When you are called, you must come in at
7. Do not go before I come.
8. I cannot give you any money, for I have n
9. Since you say so, I must believe it.
10. He fled lest he should be killed.
11. I shall be vexed if you do that.
12. We got into the port before the storm came on.
13. He was sorry after he had done it.;
14. I did not come because you did not call me.
15. He is richer than I am.
16. My grandfather died before I was born.
17. I will stay until you return.

18. Catch me if you can.
19. Tom runs faster than Harry.
20. Is that story true or false?
21. You will be late unless you hurry.
22. He asked whether he might have a holiday.
23. Give me to drink, else I shall die of thirst.
24. If I feel any doubt, I ask.
25. He deserved to succeed, for he worked hard.
26. He will be sure to come if you invite him.
27. We can travel by land or water.
28. The earth is larger than the moon.
29. Either you are mistaken, or I am.
30. I shall go, whether you come or not.
31. Unless you tell me the truth, I shall punish you.
32. I hear that your brother is in London.
33. Blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

Exercise in Composition 95

Use these Conjunctions in complex sentences:-

- (1) But, either-or, neither-nor, whether-or.
- (2) That, before, how, as, unless, until, though, when, while, where, if, than.

Exercise in Composition 96

Fill the blanks with appropriate Conjunctions:-

1. Be just --- fear not.
2. I ran fast, --- I missed the train.
3. He fled, --- he was afraid.
4. Make haste, --- you will be late.
5. --- you try, you will not succeed.
6. I am sure --- he said so.
7. Wait --- I return.
8. Do not go --- I come.
9. He finished first --- he began late.
10. Take care --- you fall.
11. Take a lamp, --- the night is dark.
12. ---he was ambitious I slew him.
13. Open rebuke is better --- secret love.
14. --- you eat too much you will be ill.
15. I shall not go --- I am invited.
16. He has succeeded better --- he hoped.
17. I do it --- I choose to.
18. --- duty calls us we must obey.
19. Live well --- you may die well.
20. Think nought a trifle, --- it small appear.

21. The purse has been lost --- stolen.
22. Rustom is slow --- sure.
23. He remained at home --- he was ill.
24. --- he was industrious, I encouraged him.

Exercise in Composition 97

Fill each blank in the following sentences with an appropriate Conjunction:-

1. Three --- three make six.
2. Is his name Sen --- Gupta ?
3. He will not come --- it rains.

4. --- you run, you will not overtake him.
5. He is very rich --- he is not happy.
6. --- I return, stay where you are.
7. He was punished, --- he was guilty.
8. He behaved --- a brave man should do.
9. There is no doubt --- the earth is round.
10. I wonder --- he will come.
11. He is witty --- vulgar.
12. Will you kindly wait --- I return?
13. Karim is tall, --- Abdul is taller.
14. He lost his balance --- fell off the bicycle.
15. He tried hard --- did not succeed.
16. Is this my book --- yours?
17. Water --- oil will not mix.
18. They left --- we returned.
19. The vase will break --- you drop it.
20. I shall not go out now --- it is raining very heavily.
21. Trains run from this station every few minutes --- we shall not have to wait.
22. Man proposes --- God disposes.
23. Time --- tide wait for no man.
24. Virtue ennobles. --- vice degrades.
25. This --- that must suffice.
26. The train was derailed --- no one was hurt.
27. She writes slowly --- neatly.
28. I believe him --- he is truthful.
29. You will not get the prize --- you deserve it.
30. Send for me --- you want me.
31. Hari will do all right, --- he perseveres.
32. Catch me --- you can.
33. He told me --- you had arrived an hour ago.
34. You will never succeed --- you try.
35. --- I were you, I'd keep quiet.
36. Wait --- I come.
37. Be just --- fear not.
38. Tell me --- you understand.
39. We will come, --- it rains --- hot
40. Make hay --- the sun shines.
41. It is a long time --- we last saw him.
42. Please write --- I dictate.
43. It is hoped --- all will go well.
44. Give me --- poverty --- riches.
45. He is taller --- I (am).
46. --- I cannot get away, I will go next week.
47. --- you wish it, it shall be done.

48. Why is our food so sweet? --- we earn before we eat.
49. Take heed --- you fall.
50. He gazed so long --- both his eyes were dazzled.
51. --- there is life there is hope.
52. Walk on --- you come to the gate.
53. They say --- he is better.
54. I have been in such a pickle --- I saw you last.
55. His plans --- vast, were never visionary.
56. Some people live --- they may eat.
57. He went --- I came.

A work from S. CHANB & COMPANY LTD.

58. He will starve --- he will steal.
59. There were more people --- we had expected.
60. --- there is something to be done, the world knows how to get it done.
61. ---I grant his honesty I suspect his memory.
62. --- I am poor, I am not dishonest.
63. No one knows --- he went.
64. Come --- you please.
65. Do --- you ate bidden.
66. He must have passed this way, --- there is no other road.
67. --- respected, he is not liked.
68. We all know --- sin and sorrow go together.
69. I don't know --- he will be here.
70. Grievances cannot be redressed --- they are known.
71. We shall fail --- we are industrious.
72. --- it was late we decided to set out.
73. I am well, --- I do not feel very strong.
74. --- he is there, I shall see him.
75. How can he buy it --- he has no money ?
76. --- you are not ready, we must go on.
77. The building has been razed --- I visited the city.
78. Love not sleep, --- thou come to poverty.
79. He bled so profusely --- the died.
80. I know you better --- he (does).

Exercise in Composition 98

Join each pair of the following sentences by means of a suitable Conjunction. Make such changes as are necessary:-

1. My brother is well. -- My sister is ill.
2. He sells mangoes. -- He sells oranges.
3. He did not succeed. -- He worked hard.
4. Rama played well. -- Hari played well.
5. I honour him. -- He is a brave man.
6. You may go. -- I will stay.
7. Rama reads for pleasure. -- Hari reads for profit.
8. We decided to set out. -- It was late.
9. He was poor. -- He was honest.
10. He is not a knave. -- He is not a fool.
11. We love Bahadur. -- He is a faithful dog.
12. Rustom made twelve runs. -- He was caught at the wicket.
13. He is rich. -- He is not happy.
14. The sheep are grazing. -- The oxen are grazing.
15. He is poor. -- He is contented.
16. This mango is large. -- This mango is sweet.

17. My brother was not there. -- My sister was not there.
18. The boy is here. -- The girl is here.
19. The piper played. -- The children danced.
20. You must be quiet. -- You must leave the room.
21. He sat down. -- He was tired.
22. Rama works hard. -- Hari is idle.
23. I lost the prize. -- I tried my best.
24. I like him. -- He is dangerous.
25. I went to the shop. -- I bought a slate.
26. He is slow. -- He is sure.
27. I know. -- He does not think so.
28. You are tall. -- My brother is taller.
29. Hari went to school. -- Sita stayed at home.
30. He must start at once. -- He will be late.
31. I shall sit still. -- I shall listen to the music.

32. Hari did not come. -- He did not send a letter.
33. I ran fast. -- I missed the train.
34. Karim works hard. -- Abdul works harder.
35. He must be tired. -- He has walked twelve miles
36. It is autumn. -- The leaves are falling.
37. I will come. -- I am not ill.
38. I will bring your umbrella. -- You wish it.
39. He remained cheerful. -- He has been wounded.
40. He went out. -- The train stopped.
41. He ran to the station. -- He missed the train.
42. I came. -- I was unwilling.
43. Men have fought for their country. -- Men have died for their country.
44. He was afraid of being late. -- He ran.
45. Hari does not write fast. -- He writes very well.
46. The boy is dangerously ill. -- The boy's head was hurt.
47. The old man fell down the steps. -- He broke his leg.
48. He tried to get up. -- He could not.
49. Mother is at home. -- Father is at home.
50. I have a cricket bat. -- I have a set of stumps.
51. We went early to the circus. -- We could not get a seat.
52. He must do as he is told. -- He will be punished.
53. The prisoner fell down on his knees. -- The prisoner begged for mercy.
54. Sita goes to school. -- Ganga goes to school.
55. Rama may be in the house. -- Rama may be in the garden.

Exercise in Grammar 99

Distinguish as Adverb, Preposition, or Conjunction, each of the italicized words in the following sentences:-

1. He came before me.
2. He came two hours before.
3. He came before I left.
4. Have you ever seen him since?
5. I have not seen him since Monday.
6. I have not seen him since he was a child.
7. Man wants but little here below.
8. He yearns for nothing but money.
9. We shall go, but you will remain.
10. He arrived after the meeting was adjourned.
11. He arrived after the meeting.
12. He arrived soon after.

CHAPTER 41

SOME CONJUNCTIONS AND THEIR USES

407. Since, as a Conjunction, means:-

(1) From and after the time when ; as

I have been in such a pickle since I saw you last.

Many things have happened since I left school.

I have never seen him since that unfortunate event happened.

Note:- Since, when used as a Conjunction in this sense, should be preceded by a verb in the present perfect tense, and followed by a verb in the simple past tense.

(2) Seeing that, inasmuch as; as

Since you wish it, it shall be done.

Since you will not work, you shall not eat.

Since that is the case, I shall excuse you.

408. Or is used:-

(1) To introduce an alternative, as

Your purse or your life.

You must work or starve.

You may take this book or that one.

Note:- There may be several alternatives each joined to the preceding one by or, resending a choice between any two in the series ; as

He may study law or medicine or engineering, or he may enter into trade.

(2) To introduce an alternative name or synonym; as,

The violin or fiddle has become the leading instrument of the modern orchestra.

(3) To mean otherwise; as

We must hasten or night will overtake us.

(4) As nearly equivalent to and ; as,

The troops were not wanting in strength or courage, but they were badly fed.

409. If is used to mean:-

(1) On the condition or supposition that; as,

If he is there, I shall see him.

If that is so, I am content.

(2) Admitting that, as,

If I am blunt, I am at least honest. If I am poor, yet I am honest.

(3) Whether; as,

I asked him if he would help me. I wonder if he will come.

(4) Whenever; as,

If I feel any doubt I inquire.

If is also used to express wish or surprise : as,

If I only knew !

410. That, as a Conjunction, retains much of its force as a Demonstrative Pronoun. Thus the sentence 'I am told that you are miserable I may be transposed into 'You are miserable: I am told that'

That is used-

(1) To express a Reason or Cause, and is equivalent to because, for that, in that; as,
Not that I loved Caesar less, but that I loved Rome more. He was annoyed that he was contradicted.

(2) To express a Purpose, and is equivalent to in order that; as,
We sow that we may reap.

He kept quiet that the dispute might cease.

(Note: Today that is rarely used for reason or purpose.)

(3) To express a Consequence, Result, or Effect; as,
I am so tired that I cannot go on.
He bled so profusely that he died.
He was so tired that he could scarcely stand.

411. Than as a Conjunction, follows adjectives and adverbs in the comparative degree; as,
Wisdom is better than rubies (are).
I see you oftener than (I see) him.
I am better acquainted with the country than you are.
I would rather suffer than that you should want.

412. Lest is used as a Subordinating Conjunction expressing a negative purpose, and is equivalent to in order that....not', 'for fear that'; as,
Love not sleep, lest thou come to poverty.
Do not be idle, lest you come to want.
He fled lest he should be killed.
I was alarmed lest we should be wrecked.
(Note:- Lest is rare in modern English.)

Note:- The modern idiomatic construction after lest is should. After certain expressions denoting fear or apprehension, lest was used as equivalent to that; as,
I feared lest I might anger thee.

413. While is used to mean:-

(1) During the time that, as long as; as,

While he was sleeping, an enemy sowed tares. While there is life there is hope.

(2) At the same time that; as,

The girls sang while the boys played. While he found fault, he also praised.

(3) Whereas; as,

While I have no money to spend, you have nothing to spend on. While this is true of some, it is not true of all.

414. Only, as a Conjunction, means except that, but, were it not (that); as,

A very pretty woman, only she squints a little.

The day is pleasant, only rather cold.

He does well, only that he is nervous at the start.

I would go with you, only I have no money.

415. Except was once in good use as a Conjunction; as,

Except (= unless) ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.

Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.

In modern English its place has been taken by unless.

416. Without:- The use of without as a Conjunction meaning unless is now bad English ;
as,
I shall not go without you do.

417. Because, for, since.- Of these three conjunctions, because denotes the closest causal conjunction, for the weakest, since comes between the two.

Exercise in Composition 100

Fill the blanks with Conjunctions:-

1. I am in the right, ---- you are in the wrong.
2. The most exquisite work of literary art exhibits a certain crudeness and coarseness, --- we turn to it from nature.
3. --- he had not paid his bill, his electricity was cut off.
4. There never can be prosperity in any country --- all the numerous cultivators of the soil are permanently depressed and injured.
5. Giving up wrong pleasure is not self-sacrifice, --- self-culture.
6. Conform thyself then to thy present fortune --- cut thy coat according to thy cloth.
7. Inconsistency consists in a change of conduct --- there is no change of circumstances which justify it.
8. The disgust felt towards any kind of knowledge is a sign that it is prematurely presented, --- that it is presented in an indigestible form.
9. --- do the learned know what sort of mortals inhabit beyond those mountains, --- whether they be inhabited at all.
10. His ambition was inordinate, --- he was jealous of every man of ability.
11. Just laws are no restraint upon the freedom of the good, --- the good man desires nothing which a just law will interfere with.
12. We judge ourselves by what we feel capable of doing, --- others judge us by what we have already done.
13. My worthy friend Sir Roger is one of those who are not only at peace with themselves, --- beloved and esteemed by all about them.
14. The fleets of the enemy were not merely defeated, --- destroyed.
15. As long as he (William of Orange) lived, he was the guiding-star of a brave nation; --- he died the little children cried in the street.
16. No one likes puns, alliterations, antithesis, argument and analysis better than I do ; I sometimes had rather be without them.
17. It (the game of fives) is "the finest exercise for the body --- best relaxation for the mind."
18. He (Omar Khayyam) abhorred hypocrisy, --- he was not too stem with the hypocrite.
19. Our proudest title is not that we are the contemporaries of Darwin, --- that we are the descendants of Shakespeare.
20. He (Henry Bradshaw) knew more about printed books --- any man living.
21. Are you impatient with the lark --- he sings rather than talks?
22. Trust the man who hesitates in his speech and is quick and steady in action, --- beware of long arguments and long beards.
23. Religion does not banish mirth --- only moderates and sets rules to it.
24. A man's real character will always be more visible in his household --- anywhere else.
25. grandfather was old and gray-haired, --- his heart leaped with joy whenever little Alice came fluttering, like a butterfly, into the room.
26. He that is slow to anger is better --- the mighty,
27. --- we approached the house, we heard the sound of music.
28. The ravine was full of sand now, --- it had once been full of water.

29. The harvest truly is plenteous, --- the labourers are few.
30. A vessel that once gets a crack, --- it may be cunningly mended, will never stand such rough usage as a whole one.
31. Give every man thy ear, --- few thy voice.
32. Virtue --- wise action lies in the mean between the two extremes of too little and too much.
33. And God called the light Day, --- the darkness He called Night.
34. That is a good book which is opened with expectation, --- closed with profit.

A work from S. CHANB & COMPANY LTD.

35. --- I was in Sri Lanka, I was particularly fascinated by the Coral Gardens of Hikkaduwa.
36. The restoration crushed for a time the Puritan party, --- placed supreme power in the hands of a libertine.
37. Of his voyage little is known, --- that he amused himself with books and with his pen.
38. --- she had given up novel writing, she was still fond of using her pen.
39. --- Addison was in Ireland, an event occurred to which he owes his high and permanent rank among British writers.
40. --- life --- property was safe, and the poor and the weak were oppressed by the strong.
41. --- Greek and Latin, --- all Aryan languages have their peaceful words in common.
42. He was an oppressor; --- he had at least the merit of protecting his people against all oppression except his own.
43. People travelling in a spacecraft appear to be weightless --- can move about --- there is no gravity in space.
44. The right of self-defence is founded in the law of nature, --- is not and cannot be superseded by the law of society.
45. Let the super structure of life be enjoyment, --- let its foundation be in solid work.
46. --- I was not a stranger to books, I had no practical acquaintance with them.
47. Poetry takes me up so entirely --- I scarce see what passes under my nose.
48. A gentleman made it a rule in reading to skip over all sentences --- he spied a note of admiration at the end.
49. --- a fog rolled over the city in the small hours, the early part of the night was cloudless.
50. --- I were personally your enemy, I might pity and forgive you.

Exercise in Composition 101

Fill the blanks with Conjunctions:-

1. --- somewhat pompous, he was an entertaining companion.
2. "Mr. Johnson", said I, "I do indeed come from Scotland, --- I cannot help it."
3. The man that stands by me in trouble I won't bid him go --- the sun shines again.
4. --- you are upon Earth enjoy the good things that are here, --- be not melancholy.
5. The art of pleasing is a very necessary one to possess ; --- a very difficult one to acquire.
6. Never maintain an argument with heat and clamour, --- you think or know yourself to be in the right.
7. --- I am in a serious humour, I very often walk by myself in Westminster Abbey.
8. I am persuaded --- the translators of the Bible were masters of an English style much fitter for that work --- any we see in our present writings.
9. He [Chaucer] must have been a man of most wonderful comprehensive nature, --- he has taken into the compass of his Canterbury Tales the various manners and humours of the whole English nation, in his age.
10. It is the common doom of man --- he must eat his bread by the sweat of his brow.
11. It is a sort of paradox, --- it is true: we are never more in danger --- when we think" ourselves most secure.

12. I have imposed upon myself, --- I have been guilty of no other imposition.
13. One of the pleasantest things in the world is going on a journey; --- I like to go by myself. I can enjoy society in a room; ---, out of doors, nature is company enough for me.
14. It [the game of fives] is the finest exercise for the body, --- the best relaxation for the mind.

15. Religion does not banish mirth --- only moderates and sets rules to it.
16. Fit words are better --- fine ones.
17. I like political changes --- such changes are made as the result, not of passion, but of deliberation and reason.
18. Civilized man, --- let loose with the bonds of morality relaxed, is a far greater beast -- - the savage, more refined in his cruelty, more fiend-like in every act.
19. The man who eats in a hurry loses both the pleasure of eating --- the profit of digestion.
20. Let a man sleep --- he is sleepy, --- rise --- the crow of the cock, --- the glare of the sun rouses him from his torpor.
21. It is a great loss to a man --- he cannot laugh.
22. Impure air can never make pure blood; --- impure blood corrupts the whole system.
23. Never refuse to entertain a man in your heart --- all the world is talking against him.
24. --- you would be healthy, be good.
25. --- you have a sword --- a pen in your hand, wield --- the one --- the other in a spirit of insolent self-reliance.
26. A regular bath in the morning, --- with very feeble and delicate subjects, has always an invigorating effect.
27. There is no more sure sign of a shallow mind --- the habit of seeing always the ludicrous side of things.
28. An honest hater is often a better fellow --- a cool friend; --- it is better not to hate at all.
29. There is no virtue that Dr. Arnold laboured more sedulously to instil into young men -- - the virtue of truthfulness.
30. The teachers of morality discourse like angels, --- they live like men.
31. Massacres --- disorders never have the way to peace.
32. Natural thirst is more deliciously gratified with water, --- artificial thirst is with wine.
33. Woman was not meant to be --- an unthinking drudge, --- the merely pretty ornament of man's leisure.
34. The real dignity of a man lies in what he has, --- in what he is.
35. They say the Lion and the Lizard keep the Courts --- Jamshyd gloried and drank deep.
36. --- I am dead, my dearest, sing no sad songs for me.
37. --- he [Lord Beaconsfield] was ambitious, his ambition was a noble one.
38. Suffer the little children to come unto me, and forbid them not, --- of such is the Kingdom of God.
39. Heard melodies are sweet, --- those unheard are sweeter.
40. I awoke one morning --- found myself famous.
41. --- the blind lead the blind, both shall fall into the ditch.
42. One generation passeth away and other generation cometh, --- the earth abideth for ever.
43. A man has no more right to say an uncivil thing --- to act one.
44. Let us shun extremes, --- each extreme necessarily engenders its opposite.
45. --- this be madness, --- there is method in it.
46. The heavens declare the glory of God, --- the firmament showeth His handi work.

47. Every good tree bringeth forth good fruit, --- a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.
48. Small service is true service --- it lasts.
49. For my part, I was always bungler at all kinds of sport that required --- Patience --- adroitness.
50. There are many truths of which the full meaning cannot be realized --- Personal experience has brought it home.
51. He may be right --- wrong in his opinion, --- he is too clearheaded to be unjust.

CHAPTER 42

THE INTERJECTION

418. Examine the following sentences:-

Hello! What are you doing there?

Alas! He is dead.

Hurrah! We have won the game.

Ah! Have they gone?

Oh! I got such a fright.

Hush! Don't make a noise.

Such words as Hello! Alas! Hurrah! Ah! etc. are called Interjections.

They are used to express some sudden feeling or emotion. It will be noticed that they are not grammatically related to the other words in a sentence.

Def:- An Interjection is a word which expresses some sudden feeling or emotion.

Interjections may express-

(1) Joy; as, Hurrah! Huzza!

(2) Grief; as, alas!

(3) Surprise; as, ha! What!

(4) Approval; as, bravo!

419. Certain groups of words are also used to express some sudden feeling or emotion;
as,

Ah me! For shame! Well done! Good gracious!

CHAPTER 43

THE SAME WORD USED AS DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH

420. The following are some of the most important words which may belong to different parts of speech according to the way in which they are used.

Always remember that it is the function or use that determines to which part of speech a word belongs in a given sentence.

About

Adverb. -- They wandered about in sheepskins and goatskins.

Preposition. -- There is Something pleasing about him.

Above

Adverb. -- The heavens are above.

Preposition. -- The moral law is above the civil.

Adjective. -- Analyse the above sentence.

Noun. -- Our blessings come from above.

After

Adverb. -- They arrived soon after.

Preposition. -- He takes after his father.

Adjective. -- After ages shall sing his glory.

Conjunction. -- We went away after they had left.

All

Adjective. -- All men are mortal. It was all profit and no loss.

Adverb. -- He was all alone when I saw him.

Pronoun. -- All spoke in his favour.

Noun. -- He lost his all in speculation.

Any

Adjective. -- Are there any witnesses present?

Pronoun. -- Does any of you know anything about it?

Adverb. -- Is that any better?

As

Adverb. -- We walked as fast as we could.

Conjunction. -- As he was poor I helped him.

Refat. Pron. -- She likes the same colour as I do.

Before

Adverb. -- I have seen you before.

Preposition. -- He came before the appointed time.

Conjunction. -- He went away before I came.

Better

Adjective. -- I think yours is a better plan.

Adverb. -- I know better.

Noun. -- Give place to your betters.

Verb. -- The boxes with which he provided me bettered the sample - Froude.

Both

Adjective. -- You cannot have it both ways.

Pronoun. -- Both of them are dead.

Conjunction. -- Both the cashier and the accountant are Hindus.

But

Adverb. -- It is but (- only) right to admit our faults.

Preposition. -- None but (= except) the brave deserves the fair.

Conjunction. -- We tried hard, but did not succeed.

Relat. Pronoun. -- There is no one but likes him (= who does not like him.)

Down

Adverb. -- Down went the "Royal George".

Preposition. -- The fire engine came rushing down the hill.

Adjective. -- The porter was killed by the down train.

Noun. -- He has seen the ups and downs of life.

Verb. -- Down with the tyrant!

Either

Adjective. -- Either bat is good enough.

Pronoun. -- Ask either of them.

Conjunction. -- He must either work or starve.

Else

Adjective. -- I have something else for you.

Adverb. -- Shall we look anywhere else ?

Conjunction. -- Make haste, else you will miss the train.

Enough

Adjective. -- There is time enough and to spare.

Adverb. -- You know well enough what I mean.

Noun. -- I have had enough of this.

Even

Adjective. -- The chances are even.

Verb. -- Let us even the ground.

Adverb. -- Does he even suspect the danger.

Except

Verb. -- If we except Hari, all are to be blamed.

Preposition. -- All the brethren were in Egypt except Benjamin.

Conjunction. -- I will not let thee go except (= unless) thou bless

For

Preposition. -- I can shift for myself.

Conjunction. -- Give thanks unto the Lord \for He is good.

Less

Adjective. -- You are paying less attention to your studies than you used to do.

A work from S. CHANB & COMPANY LTD.

Adverb. -- The population of India is less than that of China.

Noun. -- He wants Rs. 600 for that watch. He won't be satisfied with less.

Like

Adjective. -- They are men of like build and stature.

Preposition. -- Do not talk like that.

Adverb. -- like as a father pitieth his own children.

Noun. -- We shall not see his like again.

Verb. -- Children like sweets.

Little

Adjective. -- There is little danger in going there.

Noun. -- Man wants but little here below.

Adverb. -- He eats very little.

More

Adjective. -- We want more men like him.

Pronoun. -- More of us die in bed than out of it.

Adverb. -- You should talk less and work more.

Much

Adjective. -- There is much sense in what he says.

Pronoun. -- Much of it is true.

Adverb. -- He boasts too much.

Near

Adverb. -- Draw near and listen.

Preposition. -- His house is near the temple.

Adjective. -- He is a near relation.

Verb. -- The time nears.

Needs

Noun. -- My needs are few.

Verb. -- It needs to be done with care.

Adverb. -- He needs must come.

Neither

Conjunction. -- Give me neither poverty nor riches.

Adjective. -- Neither accusation is true.

Pronoun. -- It is difficult to negotiate where neither will trust.

Next

Adjective. -- I shall see you next Monday.

Adverb. -- What next?

Preposition. -- He was sitting next her.

Noun. -- I shall tell you more about it in my next.

No

Adjective. -- It is no joke.

Adverb. -- He is no more.

Noun. -- I will not take a no.

Once

Adverb. -- I was young once.

Conjunction. -- Once he hesitates we have him.

Noun. -- Please help me for once.

One

Adjective. -- One day I met him in the street.

Pronoun. -- The little ones cried for joy.

Noun. -- One would think he was mad.

Only

Adjective. -- It was his only chance.

Adverb. -- He was only foolish.

Conjunction. -- Take what I have, only (= but) let me go.

Over

Adverb. -- Read it over carefully.

Noun. -- In one over he took three wickets.

Preposition. -- At thirty a change came over him.

Right

Verb. -- That is a fault that will right itself.

Adjective. -- He is the right man for the position.

Noun. -- I ask it as a right.

Adverb. -- Serves him right! He stood right in my way.

Round

Adjective. -- A square peg in a round hole.

Noun. -- The evening was a round of pleasures.

Adverb. -- He came round to their belief.

Preposition. -- The earth revolves round the sun.

Verb. -- We shall round the cape in safety.

Since

Preposition. -- Since that day I have not seen him.

Conjunction. -- Since there's no help, come, let us kiss and part

Adverb. -- I have not seen him since.

So

Adverb. -- I am so sorry.

Conjunction. -- He was poor, so they helped him.

Some

Adjective. -- We must find some way out of it.

Pronoun. -- Some say one thing and others another.

Adverb. -- Some thirty chiefs were present.

Still

Verb. -- With his name the mothers stilt their babes.

Adjective. -- Still waters run deep.

Noun. -- Her sobs could be heard in the still of night.

Adverb. -- He is still in business.

Such

Adjective. -- Don't be in such a hurry.

Pronoun. -- Such was not my intention.

That

Demonst Adjective. -- What is that noise.

Demonst Pronoun. -- That is what I want.

Adverb. -- I have done that much only.

Relative Pronoun. -- The evil that men do lives after them.

Conjunction. -- He lives so that he may eat.

The

Def. Article. -- he cat loves comfort.

Adverb. -- The wiser he is, the better.

Till

Preposition. -- Never put off till tomorrow what you can do to-day.

Conjunction. -- Do not start till I give the word.

Up

Adverb. -- Prices are up.

Preposition. -- Let us go up the hill.

Adjective. -- The next up train will leave here at 12.30.

Noun. -- They had their ups and downs of fortune.

Well

Noun. -- Let well alone.

Adjective. -- I hope you are now well.

Adverb. -- Well begun is half done.

Interjection. -- Well, who would have thought it?

What

Inter. Adjective. -- What evidence have you got?

Interjection. -- What ! you don't mean to say so?

Inter. Pronoun. -- What does he want?

Relative Pronoun. -- Give me what you can. What happened then, I do not know.

Adverb. -- What by fire and what by sword, the whole country was laid waste.

While

Noun. -- Sit down and rest a while.

Verb. -- They while away their evenings with books and games.

Conjunction. -- While a great poet, he is a greater novelist.

Why

Interro. Adverb. -- Why did you do it?

Relative Adverb. -- I know the reason why he did it.

Interjection. -- Why, it is surely Nanak!

Noun. -- This is not the time to go into the why and the wherefore of it.

Yet

Adverb. -- There is more evidence yet to be offered.

Conjunction. -- He is willing, yet unable.

Exercise in Grammar 102

What part of speech is each of the words in italics?

1. He kept the fast for a week.
2. Mohammedans fast in the month of Ramzan.
3. He is the right man in the right place.
4. God defend the right!
5. There is much truth in what he says.
6. Much cry and little wool.
7. Don't boast too much.
8. It is hard to understand.
9. Men who work hard enjoy life fully.
10. Little learning is a dangerous thing.
11. He is little known here.
12. It matters little what he says.
13. I have long thought so.

14. It is long since we met.
15. Still waters run deep.
16. He still lives in that house.
17. That boy gives any amount of trouble.
18. Is that any better?
19. A better man than he never lived.
20. He knows better than to quarrel.
21. He spoke in a loud voice.
22. Do not speak so loud.
23. Most people think so.
24. What most annoys me is his obstinacy.
25. Some twenty boys were absent.
26. I will take some, but not all.
27. Please call me early.
28. The early bird catches the worm.
29. That can stand over.
30. Take this parcel over to the post office.
31. He has no command over himself.
32. He was only a yard off me.
33. Suddenly one of the wheels came off.
34. I must be off.
35. He told us all about the battle.
36. He lives about two miles from here.
37. Several men were standing about.
38. After the storm comes the calm.
39. The after effects of potash bromide are bad.
40. He went after I came.
41. The minstrels follow after.
42. May comes after April.
43. All fish are not caught with flies.
44. All is fair in love and war.
45. We shall lie all alike in our graves.
46. He that is warm thinks all so.
47. What is all this noise?
48. All is not lost.
49. He is all for amusement.
50. All is good in a famine.

Exercise in Grammar 103

What part of speech is each of the words in italics?

1. He is not any the worse for it.
2. A thing you don't want is dear at any price.
3. I thought as much.

4. He is as deaf as a post.
5. He got the same result as before.
6. As he was ambitious, I slew him.
7. Men fear death as children to go in the dark.
8. There is no such flatterer as a man's self.
9. He did his best.
10. I like this best.
11. He is my best friend.
12. He is but a child.
13. Fear nought but sin.
14. But for his help, I could not have done it.
15. The paths of glory lead but to the grave.
16. But that I saw it I could not have believed it.
17. I change, but I cannot die.
18. There is no lane but has a turning.
19. The fool is busy in every one's business but his own.
20. Enough of this!
21. She sings well enough.
22. Enough is as good as a feast.
23. We have not men enough.
24. He is like his father.
25. Hike the offer.
26. Did you ever hear the like of it?
27. Do not talk like that.
28. I have heard more since.
29. This sum is more difficult.
30. More will be wanted.
31. He stood next me in class.
32. The next moment he was dead.
33. What happened next?
34. We have no money.
35. He is no better, no worse.
36. His answer was a decided no.
37. Right the wrong.
38. He is in the right.
39. He is always right.
40. Set it right.
41. Use right words.
42. Since you say so, I believe it.
43. He has been ill since yesterday.
44. He has returned home long since.
45. What was that noise?
46. He died that he might save his country.
47. What is the man that does not love his country?
48. Give him what you can.
49. What nonsense is this!

50. What does it profit?

HIGH SCHOOL ENGLISH COMPOSITION

PART 1

ANALYSIS, TRANSFORMATION AND SYNTHESIS

CHAPTER 1

ANALYSIS OF SIMPLE SENTENCES

1. We have learnt that a Sentence is a set or group of words which makes complete sense.

We have also learnt that the first stage in the analysis of a sentence is to divide it into two main parts - the Subject and the Predicate; as,

No. -- SUBJECT -- PREDICATE

1. Dogs -- bark.
2. The sun -- gives light.
3. The child -- is dead.
4. The boys -- made Rama captain.
5. My father -- gave me a watch.
6. The flames -- spread everywhere.
7. The flames -- spread in every direction.
8. The hour to prepare lessons -- has arrived.

The subject denotes the person or thing about which something is said.

The predicate is what is said about the person or thing denoted by the Subject.

We see that the Subject may consist of one word or several words. "Us, in sentence 1 the subject consists of one word, viz., the Noun dogs; in sentence 8 the Subject consists of five words of which the most important word is the Noun hour.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

We also see that the Predicate may consist of one word or several words. Thus, in sentence 1 the Predicate consists of one word, viz., the

Verb bark; in sentence 5 the Predicate consists of four words of which the essential word is the Verb gave.

Exercise 1.

In the following sentences separate the Subject and the Predicate:-

1. The cackling of geese saved Rome.
2. Stone walls do not a prison make.
3. All matter is indestructible.
4. No man can serve two masters.
5. A sick room should be well aired.
6. I shot an arrow in the air.
7. A barking sound the shepherd hears.
8. Up went the balloon.
9. The naked every day he clad,
10. Into the street the piper slept.
11. Sweet are the uses of adversity.
12. Dear, gentle, patient, noble Nell was dead.

2. When the Subject of a sentence consists of several words, there is always one word in it which is more important than the other words. This chief word in the complete Subject is called the Subject-word or

Simple Subject. Thus, in the sentence,
The little child, tired of play, / is sleeping,
the Noun child is the Subject-word.

The Subject-word is always a Noun, or a word or group of words that does the work of a Noun ; as,

He /tried his best.
The rich / are not always happy.
Talking overmuch / is a sign of vanity.
To err /is human.
To find fault I is easy.

3. In the complete Subject, the Subject-word is qualified by an Adjective or Adjective-equivalent (A word or group of words which does the work of an adverb is called an Adverb - equivalent) called its Enlargement or attribute; as,

1. New brooms / sweep clean.
2. Barking dogs / seldom bite.
3. Hari's father / is an engineer.
4. My views / are quite different.
5. Firdousi, the poet, / wrote the Shah Namah.
6. A desire to excel / is commendable.

7. A stitch in time / saves nine.

No. -- SUBJECT (Subject word -- Attribute)-- PREDICATE

1. brooms -- New -- sweep clean.
2. dogs -- Barking -- seldom bite.
3. father -- Hari's -- Is an engineer.
4. views -- My -- are quite different.
5. firdousi -- The poet -- wrote the Shah Namah.
6. desire -- (1) A, (2) To Excel -- is commendable.
7. stitch -- (1) A, (2) In Time -- saves nine.

It will be noted that-

- in 1, the Attribute is an Adjective;
- in 2, the Attribute is a Participle (or Participial Adjective);
- in 3, the Attribute is a Noun in the Possessive or Genitive Case;
- in 4, the Attribute is a Possessive Adjective;
- in 5, the Attribute is a Noun in Apposition;
- in 6, the Attribute (to excel) is a Gerundial Infinitive;
- in 7, the Attribute (in time) is a group of words doing the work of an Adjective.

Note:- A or an and the are really Attributes, but they are sometimes treated as parts of the Subject-word.

Exercise 2.

In the following sentences pick out the complete Subject; then separate Subject-word from its Attributes:-

1. The boy, anxious to learn, worked hard.
2. A burnt child dreads the fire.
3. Birds of a feather flock together.
4. The attempt to scale the fort was an utter failure.
5. The days of our youth are the days of our glory.
6. Ill habits gather by unseen degrees.
7. The dog, seizing the man by the collar, dragged him out.
8. The streets of some of our cities are noted for their crookedness.
9. A house divided against itself cannot stand.
10. Deceived by his friends, he lost all hope.
11. The man carrying a hoe is a gardener.
12. One man's meal is another man's poison.
13. My days among the Dead are past.
14. With his white hair unbonneted, the stout old sheriff comes.

4. We have seen that the Predicate may consist of one word or several words.

When the Predicate consists of one word that word is always a Verb, because we cannot say anything without using a saying-word, i.e., a Verb. (See sentence 1 in § 1).

When the Predicate consists of several words, the essential word in the Predicate is always a Verb. (As the Verb is the essential word in the Predicate it is sometimes called the Predicate-word).

5. Just as the Subject-word may be qualified by an Adjective or Adjective-equivalent, the Verb in the Predicate may be qualified by an Adverb or Adverb-equivalent (A word or group of words which does the work of an adverb is called an Adverb - equivalent), called, in analysis, its Extension or Adverbial Qualification ; as,

1. The flames spread everywhere.
2. He went home.
3. He rose in go.
4. The flames spread in every direction.
5. Spring advancing, the swallows appear.

No. -- SUBJECT (Subject-word -- Attribute) -- PREDICATE (Verb -- Adverbial Qualification)

1. flames -- The -- spread -- everywhere
2. He -- -- went -- home
3. He -- -- rose -- to go
4. flames -- The -- spread -- in every direction
5. swallows -- The -- appear -- Spring advancing

It will be noted that:-

- in 1, the Adverbial Qualification is an Adverb;
- in 2, the Adverbial Qualification is an Adverbial Accusative;
- in 3, the Adverbial Qualification is a Gerundial Infinitive;
- in 4, the Adverbial Qualification is a group of words doing the work of an Adverb;
- in 5, the Adverbial Qualification is an Absolute Phrase.

Exercise 3.

Point out the Adverbial Qualification in each of the following sentences and say whether it is an Adverb, an Adverbial Accusative, a Gerundial Infinitive, a group of words doing the work of an Adverb, or an Absolute Phrase:-

1. She spoke distinctly.
2. He spoke in a distinct voice.
3. The boy ran a mile.
4. The postman called again.
5. He has come to stay.
6. Wait a minute.
7. The book is printed in clear type.
8. I recognized your voice at once.
9. Help a lame dog over a stile.
10. The tide having turned, the ship set sail.
11. He sold his horse below its value.
12. He leaves two children behind him.
13. He gets his living by trade.
14. He made his money by trade.
15. The enemy disputed the ground inch by inch.
16. He saw a new world spread about him.
17. The village life suited him in all respects.
18. Him will I follow to the ends of the earth.

6. When the Verb in the Predicate is an Intransitive Verb, it alone can form the Predicate;
as,

1. Dogs / bark.
2. Black clouds / are gathering.
3. The boys / have been reading.

Note:- In sentence 1, the Verb consists of only one word. Often the Verb itself consists of a group of two or more words, as in 2 and 3.

7. Sometimes the Verb in the Predicate is an Intransitive Verb of Incomplete Predication, that is, an Intransitive Verb which requires Noun, or an Adjective, or a Pronoun, etc, added to it to make the Predicate complete ; as,
The baby seems/happy.

If I simply say 'The baby seems' I do not make complete sense., The Intransitive Verb seems requires some word or words to make trtf | Predicate complete.

What is thus required to complete the Predicate is called a Complement.

The Complement of an Intransitive Verb serves to describe the Subject, and is therefore called a Subjective Complement.

Now examine the Predicates in the following sentences:-

1. The sky grew dark.
2. Venus is a planet.
3. It is me.
4. The man seems worried.
5. Your book is there.
6. The house is to let.
7. The building is in a dilapidated condition.

No. -- SUBJECT (Subject-word -- Attribute)-- PREDICATE (Verb -- Complement)

1. sky -- The -- grew -- dark
2. Venus -- -- is -- a planet
3. It -- -- is me
4. man -- The -- seems -- worried
5. book -- Your -- is -- there
6. house -- The -- is -- to let
7. building -- The -- is -- in a dilapidated

It will be noticed that:-

- in 1, the Complement is an Adjective ;
- in 2, the Complement is a Noun ;
- in 3, the Complement is a Pronoun ;
- in 4, the Complement is a Participle ;
- in 5, the Complement is an Adverb ;
- in 6, the Complement is an Infinitive ;
- in 7, the Complement is a group of words doing the work of an Adjective.

Note:- When the Predicate is completed by an Adjective, such an Adjective is said to be used Predicatively or to be a Predicative Adjective.

When the Predicate is completed by a Noun, the Noun is said to be a Predicative Noun.

Exercise 4.

Pick out the Complement in each of the following sentences, and say whether it is a Noun, an Adjective, a Pronoun, etc.:-

1. John became a soldier.
2. Roses smell sweet.
3. The child appears pleased.

4. The workman seems tired.
5. The earth is round.
6. He looks happy.
7. Sugar tastes sweet.

8. The old woman is dead.
9. The weather was cold.
10. He became unconscious.
11. The old gentleman is of a gentle disposition.
12. The child is there.
13. The children look healthy.
14. To-day she seems sad.
15. The cup is full to the brim.
16. His grammar is shocking.
17. He is a good type of the modern athlete.
18. Ugly rumours are about.
19. Gentle Evangeline was the pride of the village.
20. This morning he seemed in good spirits.
21. Giving to the poor is lending to the Lord.
22. The matter appears of considerable importance.
23. Every man is the architect of his own fortune.

8. Sometimes the Verb in the Predicate is a Transitive Verb, that is, a Verb which requires an Object to complete its sense.

For example, if I say 'Cats catch' I do not make complete sense. You want to know what the cats catch. The verb catch requires an Object, such as mice to form a complete Predicate.

Now examine the Predicates in the following sentences:-

1. Birds build nests.
2. I know him.
3. All good children pity the poor.
4. The Gurk has love fighting.
5. The foolish crow tried to sing.
6. Our soldiers tried to scale the cliff.

No. -- SUBJECT (Subject-word -- Attribute) -- PREDICATE (Verb -- Object)

1. Birds -- -- build -- nests
2. I -- -- know -- him
3. Children -- (1) All (2) good -- pity -- the poor
4. Grukhas -- The -- love -- fighting
4. crow -- (1) The (2) Foolish -- tired -- to sing
5. soldiers -- Our -- tired -- to scale the cliff.

It will be noticed that:-

- in 1, the Object is a Noun ;
- in 2, the Object is a Pronoun ;

in 3, the Object is an Adjective used as a Noun ;
in 4, the Object is a Gerund or Verbal Noun ;
in 5, the Object is an Infinitive ;
in 6, the Object is a group of words doing the work of a Noun.

9. The Object-word may have Attributes, just like the Subject-word; as,
He shot a big panther.

SUBJECT -- PREDICATE (Verb -- Object -- Attribute)

He -- shot -- panther -- (1) a (2) big

Exercise 5.

In the following sentences point out the complete Object; then separate the Object-word from its attributes (if any):-

1. The world knows nothing of its greatest men.
2. We should learn to govern ourselves.
3. Her arms across her breast she laid.
4. The architect drew a plan for the house.
5. Serpents cast their skin once a year.
6. God tempers the wind to the shorn lamb.
7. By their fruits ye shall know them.
8. Rock the baby to sleep.
9. He enjoys his master's confidence.
10. I recognized your voice at once.
11. Cut your coat according to your cloth.
12. The Eskimos make houses of snow and ice.
13. I had no answer to my letter.
14. The curfew tolls the knell of parting day.
15. Fear no more the heat of the sun.
16. Evil communications corrupt good manners.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

10. Sometimes the Verb in the Predicate is a Transitive Verb that takes two Objects - a Direct Object and an Indirect Object.

If I say 'Rama gave a penknife', the noun penknife is the Object of the verb gave.

I may, however, by way of further information, say to whom Rama gave a penknife. Rama gave me a penknife.

The word me is called the Indirect Object of the Verb gave to distinguish it from the Object penknife, which is the Direct Object.

Now examine the Predicate in the following sentences:-

I promised him a present.

He teaches us Geometry.

Father bought Mini a doll.

SUBJECT -- PREDICATE (Verb -- Indirect Object -- Direct Object)

I -- promised -- him -- a person

He -- teaches -- us -- Geometry

Father -- bought -- Mini -- a doll

11. Some Transitive Verbs require a Complement in addition to the Object; as,
The boys made Rama captain.

Here the Noun Rama is the object of the Transitive Verb made which here requires a word (e.g., captain) to make the sense complete.

If I say 'The boys made a snow-ball' the sense is complete. But it would be nonsense to say 'The boys made Rama.' The boys did not make Rama: they made Rama captain. The verb made is here a Transitive Verb of Incomplete Predication, because in the sense in which the verb made is here used, it cannot form a complete predicate unless it has a Complement besides an Object.

The Complement (captain) here refers to the Object Rama. It is therefore called an Objective Complement.

Now examine the Predicates in the following sentences:-

1. The jury found him guilty.
2. His parents named him Hari.
3. He kept us waiting.
4. Nothing will make him repent.
5. His words filled them with terror.

No. -- SUBJECT (Subject-word -- Attribute) -- PREDICATE (Verb -- Object Complement)

1. jury -- The -- found -- him -- guilty
2. parents -- His -- named -- him -- Hari
3. He -- -- kept -- us -- waiting
4. Nothing -- -- will make -- repent
5. words -- filled -- them -- with terror

Exercise 6.

In the following sentences separate the Predicate from the Subject and then point out the different parts of the Predicate.

1. Abdul called his cousin a fool.
2. Exercise has made his muscles strong.
3. This will make you happy,
4. The Nawab appointed his own brother Vizier.
5. The Court appointed him guardian of the orphan child.
6. Time makes the worst enemies friends.
7. Sickness made the child irritable,
8. They elected him secretary of the club.
9. Do you take me for a fool?
10. We saw the storm approaching.
11. I consider the man trustworthy.
12. They kept us in suspense.
13. The jury found him guilty of murder.
14. A thunderstorm often turns milk sour.

12. Let us now review the different forms of the Predicate.

- (1) When the verb is Intransitive, the Predicate may consist of the verb alone (§ 6).
- (2) When the verb is an Intransitive Verb of Incomplete Predication, the Predicate may consist of the Verb and its Complement (§ 7).
- (3) When the verb is a Transitive Verb, the Predicate may consist of the Verb and its Object (§ 8).

(4) When the verb is a Transitive Verb having two objects, the predicate may consist of the Verb and its two Objects:-

Indirect and Direct, (10)

(5) When the verb is a Transitive Verb of Incomplete Predication, the Predicate may consist of the Verb, its Object and a Complement. (§ 11).

13. Carefully study the analysis of the following sentences: The table is printed on page 178.

1. Abdul, quite pale with fright, rushed into the room.
2. Determination to do one's duty is laudable,
3. Around the fire, one wintry night,
The farmer's rosy children sat.
4. Home they brought the warrior dead.
5. His friends elected him secretary of the club.
6. This circumstance certainly makes the matter very serious.
7. My uncle has been teaching me mathematics.
8. Jaffar, the Barmecide, the good Vizier,
The poor man's hope, the friend without a peer.
Jaffar was dead, slain by a doom unjust.
9. Who are you ?

Exercise 7.

Analyse the following sentences:-

1. A nod from a lord is breakfast for a fool.
2. A good paymaster never wants workmen.
3. Home they brought her warrior dead.
4. Sickness made the child irritable.
5. Gentle Evangeline was the pride of the village.
6. It is easy to find fault,
7. It is a miserable thing to live in suspense.
8. Wounds made by words are hard to heal.
9. Down went the Royal George.
10. Into the valley of death rode the six hundred.
11. Time makes the worst enemies friends.
12. Great is your reward in Heaven.
13. In him India lost a true patriot.
14. The proof of the pudding is in the eating.
15. It is easy to be wise after the event.
16. A man he was to all the country dear.
17. Experience has taught us many lessons.
18. A man's first care should be to avoid the reproaches of his own heart.
19. All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.
20. He showed a constant solicitude for his son's welfare.

21. Caesar, having conquered his enemies, returned to Rome.
22. To drive a car requires care and skill.
23. A great fortune in the hands of a fool is a great misfortune.
24. The postman looked very tired at the end of the day.

Note:- In 6, “It” is a provisional subject; the real subject is “to find fault”. “It” should be entered in the subject-column in brackets.

“It” is provisional subject in 7 and 15 also.

No. -- SUBJECT (Subject-word -- Attribute) -- PREDICATE (Verb -- Object -- Complement -- Adverbial Qualification)

1. Abdul -- quite pale with fright -- rushed -- -- -- into the room
2. Determination -- to do one's duty -- is -- -- laudable --
3. children -- (1) the farmer's (2) rosy -- sat -- -- (1) Around the fire (2) one wintry night
4. they -- -- brought -- the warrior dead -- -- Home
5. friends -- His -- elected -- him -- secretary of the club --
6. circumstance -- This -- makes -- the matter -- very serious -- certainly
7. uncle -- My -- has been teaching -- (1) mathematics (Direct) (2) me (Indirect) -- --
8. Jaffar -- (1) the Barmecide (2) the good Vizier (3) the poor man's hope (4) the friend without a peer, -- was -- -- dead -- slain by a doom unjust
9. you -- -- are -- -- Who --

CHAPTER 2

PHRASES

1. Adjective Phrases

14. We have seen that sometimes a group of words does the work of an adjective (§ 3). Now examine the following pairs of sentences:-

1. (a) The vizier was a wealthy man.
(b) The vizier was a man of great wealth.
2. (a) The magistrate was a kind man.
(b) The magistrate was a man with a kindly nature.
3. (a) The chief lived in a stone house.
(b) The chief lived in a house built of stone.
4. (a) I like to see a smiling face.
(b) I like to see a face with a smile on it.
5. (a) The coolies belonged to a hill tribe.
(b) The coolies belonged to a tribe dwelling in the hills.

In each of the above pairs of sentences, we have first a single word describing the person or thing denoted by the noun, and then a group of words describing the person or thing denoted by the same noun.

For instance, the group of words of great wealth tells us what sort of man the vizier was. It qualifies the noun man just as an Adjective does. It therefore does the work of an Adjective and is called an Adjective Phrase.

Def:- An Adjective Phrase is a group of words that does the work of an Adjective.

15. Study the following Adjectives and the Adjective Phrases that are equivalent to them:-

Adjectives -- Adjective Phrases

- A golden crown. -- A crown made of gold.
- A purple cloak. -- A cloak of purple colour.
- A white elephant. -- An elephant with a white skin.
- A jungle track. -- A track through the jungle.
- A blue-eyed boy. -- A boy with blue eyes.
- A deserted village. -- A village without any inhabitants.
- A blank page. -- A page with no writing on it.
- The longest day. -- The day of greatest length.

The Spanish flag. -- The flag of Spain.
A heavy load. -- A load of great weight.

Exercise 8.

Pick out the Adjective Phrases, in the following sentences:-

1. A man in great difficulties came to me for help.
2. He is a person of very considerable renown.
3. Wild beasts in small cages are a sorry sight.
4. A man without an enemy is a man with few friends.
5. He tells a tale with the ring of truth in it.
6. A friend in need is a friend in deed.

7. A stitch in time saves nine.
8. A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
9. Gardens with cool shady trees surround the village.
10. Only a man with plenty of money buys a car of such beauty and power.
11. In a low voice he told the tale of his cruel wrongs.
12. Do you know the story of the noble Padmini?
13. He was a lad of great promise.
14. He bore a banner with a strange device.
15. The police arrested a man of one of the criminal tribes.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

Exercise 9.

In each of the following sentences replace the Adjective in italics by an Adjective Phrase of the same meaning:-

1. A grey cloud spread over the sky.
2. He dwelt in a wooden hut.
3. He had a bald head.
4. She wore a diamond necklace.
5. It was a horrible night.
6. They went by Siberian railway.
7. A grassy meadow stretched before us.
8. An earthen pitcher stood on a three-legged table.
9. The French flag flew at the top of the highest mast.
10. That was a cowardly act.
11. He is well.
12. A valuable ring was found yesterday.
13. Heroic deeds deserve our admiration.
14. Much has been said about the Swiss scenery.
15. Numerical superiority is a great advantage.
16. The Rajputs were passionately fond of martial glory.
17. I have passed two sleepless nights.
18. He is a professional cricketer.
19. This book contains many biblical quotations.
20. She wants medical advice.
21. A tall soldier stepped forth.

Exercise 10.

Replace each of the following Adjective Phrases in italics by an Adjective of the same meaning:-

- He wore a turban made of silk.
He has done a deed of shame.
He led a life devoid of blame.

He had a bold held.
It was a horrible night.
They went by Siberian railway.
I met a little girl from a cottage.
Balu was a man with plenty of impudence.
From this village in the mountains came a chieftain of a great fame.
The Rajput leader was a soldier full of hope and free from fear.
Nelson was a boy without fear.
Nobody likes a person with a bad temper.
I admit that he is a man of sense.
The tops of the mountains were covered with snow.
He is an author of great versatility.
It is of no use.

Note:- Not all Adjective Phrases can be replaced by Adjectives, for instance :
He never felt the witchery of the soft blue sky.

Exercise 11.

Fill in the blanks with suitable Adjective Phrases:-

1. An elephant --- is considered searched by some people.
2. Birds --- flock together.
3. He leads a life ---.
4. Children like books ---.
5. He lost a diamond ---.
6. The old sage spoke words ---.
7. She is a woman ---.
8. John Gilpin was a citizen ---.
9. Draw a picture ---.
10. The leaves --- are glossy.
11. He heard the sound ---.

12. Listen to the sound ---.
13. The verdict --- was in his favour.
14. The doors --- closed upon him.
15. The water --- is very deep.
16. The road --- is very muddy.
17. The proprietor --- died yesterday,
18. The paths --- lead but to the grave.

Exercise 12.

Write five sentences containing Adjective Phrases.

II. Adverb Phrases

16. Just as the work of an Adjective is often done by a group of words called an Adjective Phras.3, so the work of an Adverb is often done by a group of words. Study the following pairs of sentences carefully:-

1. (a) Rama ran quickly. (How?)
(b) Rama ran with great speed. (How?)
2. (a) He answered rudely. (How?)
(b) He answered in a very rude manner. (How?)
3. (a) He does his work carelessly. (How?)
(b) He does his work without any care. (How?)
4. (a) He is coming now (When?)
(b) He is coming at this very moment. (When?)
5. (a) No such diseases were known then. (When?)
(b) No such diseases were known in those days. (When?)
6. (a) The arrow fell here. (Where?)
(b) The arrow fell on this spot. (Where?)
7. (a) You can buy it everywhere. (Where?)
(b) You can buy it in all places. (Where?)
8. (a) He fell down. (Where?)
(b) He fell to the ground. (Where?)

In each of the above pairs of sentences we have first a single word (an Adverb) modifying a verb, and then a group of words modifying a verb in the same way.

For instance, the group of words with great speed tells us how Rama ran. It modifies the verb ran just as the Adverb quickly does. It therefore does the work of an Adverb and is called an Adverb Phrase.

Def:- An Adverb Phrase is a group of words that does the work of an Adverb.

Note:- An Adverb Phrase, like an Adverb, may modify also an Adjective or Adverb: as,
Quinine is good for malaria.

I have done well on the whole.

17. Study the following Adverbs and the Adverb Phrases that are equivalent to them.

Adverbs -- Adverb Phrases

Bravely -- In a brave manner, or with bravery.

Unwisely -- In an unwise manner, or without wisdom.

Swiftly -- In a swift manner, or with swiftness.

Beautifully -- In a beautiful style.

Adverbs -- Adverb Phrases

Formerly -- In former times, or once upon a time.

Recently -- Just now, or at a recent date.

Soon -- Before very long, or at an early date.

There -- At that place.

Away -- To another place.

Abroad -- To (in) a foreign country.

Exercise 13.

Pick out the Adverb Phrases in the following sentences:-

1. She lived in the middle of a great wood.
2. Nothing can live on the moon.
3. Come into the garden, Maud.
4. Three fishers went sailing over the sea.
5. O'er her hangs the great dark bell.
6. Down in a green and shady bed, a modest violet grew.
7. On your conscience this will lie.
8. They sat for a while on the bank.
9. Honesty is written on his face.
10. The gun went off with a loud report.
11. There dwelt a miller hale and bold, beside the river Dee.
12. I stood on the bridge at midnight.
13. To the northward stretched the desert.
14. Beside a green meadow a stream used to flow.
15. I have read Bacon to my great profit.
16. In her ear he whispers gaily.
17. Beside the ungathered rice he lay.
18. They fought to the last man.
19. He persevered in the face of all obstacles.
20. The shoe is pressing on my toe.
21. Keep him at arm's length.
22. Make yourself at home.
23. It must be done at any price.
24. Pauperism increases at a fearful rate.
25. He has painted him in his proper colours.
26. He has his finger on the pulse of the nation.
27. He lives by his pen.
28. The shepherd shouted to them at the top of his voice.
29. He strove with all his might to escape.
30. Without pausing to consider, he struck the blow.
31. Much water has run under the bridge since then.

Exercise 14.

In each of the following sentences replace the Adverb in italics by an Adverb Phrase of the same meaning:-

1. The pigeon flies *swiftly*.
2. Did Rama behave *well*?
3. Go *away*.
4. The *dying* man replied *feebly*.
5. Gently *fell* the rain.
6. We will pitch the tents just *here*.
7. He expects to get promotion *soon*.
8. He built his house *yonder*.
9. They have only *recently* arrived.
10. Although *hungry*, the soldiers worked *cheerfully*.
11. He spoke *eloquently*.
12. *Soon* the sun will set.
13. Do your work *thoroughly*.
14. They were hurrying *homeward*.
15. The door was *suspiciously* open.
16. *Formerly* he worked at the School of Economics.
17. He tried *hard*.

Exercise 15.

Replace each of the following Adverb Phrases by an Adverb of the same meaning:-

1. The bodies were mangled in a *terrible manner*.
2. Let us cease work from this *very truthfulness*.
3. It was *just on this spot* that he died.
4. The child replied with *perfect*
5. He arrived at *that moment*.
6. I hope that he will come at a *very early date*.

7. He seems to have acted with great promptitude.
8. No one would dare to answer him in an impudent way.
9. I accept your statement without reserve.
10. I thank you with all my heart.
11. He succeeded in the long run.
12. He is ignorant to a proverb.
13. The post-boy drove with fierce carrier.
14. He has been painted in his proper colours.
15. The wind blew with great violence.
16. He has proved his case to my satisfaction.

Note:- Not all Adverb Phrases can be replaced by Adverbs. For instance:-
I took him on the strength of your recommendation.

Exercise 16.

Fill in the blanks with suitable Adverb Phrases:-

1. The knight fought ---.
2. The Rajah treated his vizier ---.
3. The woodman struck the wolf ---.
4. Do not answer ---.
5. I agree ---.
6. He has behaved ---.
7. He does his homework ---.
8. He treated his relatives ---.
9. The police handled the bombs ---.
10. The sailor climbed ---.
11. That happened ---.
12. He reached school ---.
13. He does his homework ---.
14. He failed ---.
15. Old Mother Hubbard went ---.

Exercise 17.

Write five sentences containing Adverb Phrases.

18. Compare:-

1. The crowd in the bazaar was very noisy.
2. The crowd halted in the bazaar.

In sentence 1, the phrase in the bazaar tells us which crowd was very noisy; that is, it qualifies the noun crowd. It is therefore an Adjective Phrase.

In sentence 2, the phrase in the bazaar tells us where the crowd halted; that is, it modifies the verb halted. It is therefore an Adverb Phrase.

Hence we see that the same phrase may be an Adjective Phrase in one sentence and an Adverb Phrase in another sentence.

We cannot say what kind of Phrase a given Phrase is until we examine the work which it does in a sentence.

Exercise 18.

Say which of the following are Adverb Phrases and which are Adjective Phrases:-

1. Have you heard of the man in the moon?
2. How could a man be in the moon?
3. They live on an island.
4. A house on an island was washed away.
5. Awful is the gloom beneath her.
6. Then why did she look beneath her?
7. Is this the train to Peshawar?
8. It usually goes to Peshawar, Sir.

Exercise 19.

Use the following phrases in sentences:-

In a loud voice; without further delay; with one voice; for certain; just in time; up in arms; of no consequence; out of fashion; with great satisfaction; in the twinkling of an eye; on either side of the street; in a shady nook; to the last man; with a smile; at sixes and sevens; at the eleventh hour; on the top of the hill; in future; at nine o'clock.

III. Noun Phrases

19. Examine the following sentences:-

1. The boy wants something.
2. The boy wants to go home.

The word something is a Noun and it is the Object of the verb wants, in sentence 1. Similarly the group of words, to go home, is the Object of the verb wants, in sentence 2. Hence this group of words does the work of a Noun. The group of words, to go home, is therefore a Noun Phrase.

Def:- A Noun Phrase is a group of words that does the work of a Noun.

Further examples of Noun Phrases:-

- Early to bed is a good maxim.
- He hopes to win the first prize.
- We enjoy playing cricket.
- He loves to issue harsh orders.
- Did you enjoy reading this book?
- I tried to get the sum right.
- To win a prize is my ambition.
- Standing about in a cold wet wind did me no good.

Exercise 20.

Pick out the Noun Phrases in the following sentences:-

1. His father wished to speak to the Headmaster.
2. The wicked vizier loves getting people into trouble.
3. The poor debtor intended to pay back every penny of the money.
4. He dislikes having to punish his servants.
5. Horses prefer living in dark stables.
6. I should hate to do such a thing.
7. Have you ever tried climbing a coconut palm?
8. Thinking good thoughts precedes good actions.
9. He refuses to answer the question.
10. To write such rubbish is disgraceful.
11. Promise to come again.
12. Why do you like visiting such a man?
13. Travelling in a hot dusty train gives me no pleasure.
14. He denies stealing the money,
15. Your doing such a thing surprises me.

Exercise 21.

Supply a Noun Phrase:-

1. I want ---.
2. --- delights me.
3. We all hope ---.
4. Pretend ---.
5. --- seems dishonest.
6. --- surprised my mother.
7. Do you wish ---?
8. My father hates ---.
9. --- gives me no pleasure.
10. I don't intend ---.
11. --- is not easy.
12. I do not expect ---.
13. I enjoy ---.
14. He wishes ---.
15. Cats like ---.
16. His father promised ---.

Exercise 22.

Pick out the Phrases and say whether they are Adjective Phrases, Adverb Phrases, or Noun Phrases:-

1. He speaks like a born orator.
2. It grieved me to hear of your illness.
3. Beyond a doubt this man is honest.
4. He failed in spite of his best efforts.
5. He won the prize by means of trickery.
6. Do not talk like that.
7. I have forgotten how to play this game.
8. He gained their affection in spite of many faults.
9. I do not expect such treatment at your hands.
10. He speaks too fast to be understood.
11. I do not know what to do.
12. I do not understand how to solve this problem.
13. He persevered amidst many difficulties.
14. He succeeded in the long run.
15. Birds of a feather flock together.
16. This is a matter of no importance.
17. The train is behind time.
18. He is a man of means.
19. It lies near his heart,
20. He keeps the necklace under lock and key.
21. He is a person of no importance.
22. I want to go to the cinema to-day.
23. I love to hear the watch-dog's honest bark.
24. I did it of my own free will.
25. Show me how to do it,
26. His car ran over a dog.
27. Things are in a bad way.
28. She is a woman of wonderful patience.
29. I have found the key to his secret.
30. The plan has the virtue of committing us to nothing.
31. I don't see the point of the story.
32. How to find the way to the ruins is the question.
33. Tubal Cain was a man of might.
34. He did it against his will.
35. I have no time to waste on trifles.
36. Don't do things by halves.
37. I enjoy walking in the fields.

CHAPTER 3

CLAUSES

1. Adverb Clauses

20. Look at the groups of words in italics in the following sentences:-

1. They rested at sunset. [*Rested when?*]
2. They vested when evening came, [*Rested when?*]

It is evident that both the groups of words in italics, in 1 and 2, do the work of an Adverb as they modify the verb rested, showing when the action was performed.

We at once recognize the first group of words, at sunset, as an Adverb Phrase. Is the second group of words, when evening came, also-an Adverb Phrase?

No: it is not a Phrase for, unlike a Phrase, it has a Subject (evening) and a Predicate (came when) of its own, and is thus like a sentence. But though like a sentence it is part of a sentence.

Such a group of words that forms part of a sentence, and has a Subject and a Predicate of its own, is called a Clause.

Since the Clause, when evening came, does the work of an Adverb clause.

Def:- An Adverb Clause is a group of words which contains a Subject and a Predicate of its own, and does the work of an Adverb.

Exercise 23.

Pick out the Adverb Clauses in the following sentences:-

1. You may sit wherever you like.
2. He fled where his pursuers could not follow.
3. He behaves as one might expect him to do.
4. Because you have done this I shall punish you.
5. As he was not there, I spoke to his brother.
6. If you eat too much you will be ill.
7. He finished first though he began late.
8. Will you wait till I return?
9. Just as he entered the room the clock struck,
10. They went where living was cheaper.
11. He does not always speak as he thinks.
12. Take a lamp because the night is dark.
13. I do it because I choose to.
14. If I make a promise I keep it,
15. You will pass if you work hard.
16. He advanced as far as he dared.
17. I forgive you since you repent.

18. I shall remain where I am.
19. We shall wait here until you come.
20. When I was younger. I thought so.
21. It was so dark that you could not see your hand.
22. Wherever one goes, one hears the same story,
23. If you do not hurry you will miss the train.
24. Since you have already decided, why do you ask my opinion?

Exercise 24.

Supply suitable Adverb Clauses:-

1. Do not go ---.
2. He is not so clever ---.
3. I was so hurried ---.
4. He ran so fast ---.
5. He always does ---.
6. He spoke so low ---.
7. I shall do nothing ---.
8. Fools rush in ---.
9. Nobody likes him ---.
10. Open rebuke is better ---.
11. He will succeed ---.
12. Make hay ---.
13. He is so busy ---.
14. Do not come ---.
15. The boy went out to play ---.
16. He does ---.
17. He always comes ---.
18. He did ---.
19. She sings exactly ---.
20. The earth is larger ---.
21. His father died ---.
22. He cannot see ---.
23. Do you work well ---?
24. I found my books ---.
25. I will not go out ---.
26. You will succeed or fail ---.
27. Arithmetic is less difficult ---.
28. We shall miss the train ---.
29. Do ---.

21. Examine the following sentences:-

1. The stolen property was found in the dacoits' hiding place.
2. The stolen property was found where the dacoits were accustomed to hide.

It will be noticed that both the groups of words in italics do the work of an Adverb.

But the group of words in italics in sentence 2 is a Clause, because it has a subject (the dacoits) and a Predicate (were accustomed

to hide where) of its own; while the group of words in italics in sentence 1 is a Phrase.

We further notice that the Adverb Phrase, in the dacoits' hiding-place, is equivalent to the Adverb Clause, where the dacoits were accustomed to hiding, and can therefore be replaced by it.

Exercise 25.

In each of the following sentences replace each Adverb Phrase by an Adverb Clause:-

1. On his return we asked him many questions.
2. Do it to the best of your ability.
3. The prince was met on his arrival by his secretary.
4. In spite of poverty he became distinguished.
5. Upon seeing the signal the troops set out.
6. Nobody must expect to become rich without hard work.
7. They were very grateful to him for his kindness.
8. In comparison with air water is heavy.
9. The weather is too bright to last.
10. My heart is too full for words.
11. The work is too much for any man to do single-handed.
12. With a view to early retirement he saved his money.
13. In the event of the president's death the vice-president succeeds him.
14. He always carried out his duties according to instructions.
15. The price is high for an old car.
16. He ran with all his might.
17. After such hard work, he requires a long rest.
18. He was base enough to accept the dishonourable terms.
19. Many ships were so shattered as to be wholly unmanageable.
20. A rose by any other name would smell as sweet.

Exercise 26.

In each of the following sentences replace each Adverb Clause by an Adverb or Adverb Phrase:-

1. I have not been well since I returned from Chennai.
2. When the sun set he returned home.
3. They fought as heroes do.
4. When the righteous rule, the people rejoice.
5. Though I am poor yet am I contented.
6. We have come so that we may help you.
7. When he entered the room he saw the vase broken.
8. The thief crept as a jackal does.
9. I am glad that he has recovered from his illness.
10. He works hard so that he may become rich.
11. He worked so hard that he succeeded.
12. As soon as I saw the cobra I ran away.

13. We ran so that we might arrive in time.
14. He jested even as he lay dying.
15. No man can become a great artist unless he applies himself continually to his art.
16. There was nothing he would not do if only he might make profit.
17. He was not so rich that he could buy a motor-car.
18. When he had uttered these words he sat down.
19. This exercise is so difficult that I cannot do it.
20. The news is so good that it cannot be true.
21. I did not pay him, as I had no money with me.
22. He lived carefully so that he might live long.
23. The steamer will leave as soon as the mails arrive.
24. He may go home after his work is finished.

25. As he was sick, he remained at home.
26. He was punished as he deserved.
27. This sum is right so far as the working is concerned.
28. It rained so hard that the streets were flooded.
29. I took him because you recommended him.
30. My parents were poor though they were of noble birth.
31. He refuses to work whatever I may say.
32. We will do the work as well as we can.
33. Robinson Crusoe was puzzled when he discovered the print of a foot on the sand.
34. Apollo was worshipped as long as the Roman Empire lasted.
35. He was passing rich though his income was only £ 40 annually.
36. We are kind to you because you are kind to us.
37. The passage is so difficult that I cannot comprehend it.

II. Adjective Clauses

22. Look at the groups of words in italics in the following sentences:-

1. The umbrella with a broken handle is mine. [*Which umbrella?*]
2. The umbrella which has a broken handle is mine. [*Which umbrella?*]

The first group of words, with a broken handle, describes the umbrella; that is, it qualifies the noun umbrella, and does the work of an Adjective. It is what we call an Adjective phrase.

The second group of words which has a broken handle, also describes the umbrella and so does the work of an Adjective. But because it contains a Subject and a Predicate of its own, it is called an Adjective Clause.

Def:- An Adjective Clause is a group of words which contains a Subject and a Predicate of its own, and does the work of an Adjective.

Exercise 27.

Pick out the Adjective Clauses in the following sentences, and tell what noun or pronoun each qualifies:-

1. Mary had a little lamb whose fleece was white as snow.
2. The letter brought money which was badly needed.
3. The house that I live in belongs to my father.
4. I am monarch of all I survey.
5. I have a little shadow which goes in and out with me.
6. The dog that bites does not bark.
7. He tells a tale that sounds untrue.
8. It's an ill wind that blows nobody any good.
9. The boy stood on the burning deck whence all but he had fled.
10. They never fail who die in a great cause.
11. I remember the house where I was born.

12. He that climbs too high is sure to fall.
13. Here is the book you want.
14. Heaven helps those who help themselves.
15. He died in the village where he was born.
16. He never does anything that is silly.
17. People who live in glass houses should not throw stones.

18. It is a long lane that has no turning.
19. He laughs best who laughs last.
20. Thrice is he armed that hath his quarrel just.

Exercise 28.

Supply suitable Adjective Clauses:-

1. I know the place ---.
2. He is the man ---.
3. The house --- is a hundred years old.
4. His offence is one ---.
5. Where is the book ---?
6. Boys --- will not be promoted.
7. He has lost the book ---
8. I found the book ---.
9. I know the man ---.
10. No man --- shall suffer in any way.
11. The boy --- gained the prize.
12. I found my penknife in the place ---.
13. Students --- get good marks.
14. Water --- should be kept in a covered jar.
15. Any boy --- will be punished.
16. He went away by the train ---.

23. Examine the following sentences:-

1. He met a girl with blue eyes.
2. He met a girl whose eyes were blue.

The group of words, with blue eyes, qualifies the noun girl.

The group of words, whose eyes were blue, also qualifies the noun girl.

Hence both these groups of words do the work of an Adjective.

But the group of words, with blue eyes, is a Phrase, while the group of words, whose eyes were blue, is a Clause.

We further notice that the Adjective Phrase, with blue eyes, is equivalent to the Adjective Clause, whose eyes were blue, and can therefore be replaced by it.

Exercise 29.

In each of the following sentences replace each Adjective Phrase by an Adjective Clause:-

1. A man of industrious habits is sure to succeed.
2. He told us the time of his arrival.

3. The time for departing has now arrived.
4. Do you know the road leading to the temple?
5. I have a box, filled with almonds.
6. We all admire a man of courage.
7. A city on a hill cannot be hid.
8. The people in the gallery could not hear.
9. You can have anything of your liking.
10. The houses of the Burmans are generally built of bamboo.

Exercise 30.

In the following sentences replace Adjective Clauses by Adjectives or Adjective Phrases:-

1. Do you know the woman who is wearing a blue sari?
2. The boy who sits near me is my cousin.
3. That was the reason why he came late.
4. The reason, why he failed, is obvious,
5. The workers, who were weary with their exertions, lay down to rest.
6. The sun, which at mid-day was hot, made the traveller thirsty,
7. Which is the road that leads most quickly to the station?
8. People who eat too much die early.
9. Many men who have not been trained to write become journalists.
10. This is the place where our forefathers landed.
11. The explanation he gave was not satisfactory.

12. Such men as you cannot be easily disheartened.
13. This boy, who has been industrious, has earned a prize which he has well deserved.
14. A belief which is generally held is not necessarily one which is true.
15. An author who was famous during the freedom struggle lived in that cottage which overlooks the lake.

III. Noun Clauses

24. Examine the groups of words in italics in the following sentences:-

1. I expect to get a prize. -- [Expect what?]
2. I expect that I shall get a prize.-- [Expect what?]

The first group of words, to get a prize, does not contain a Subject and a Predicate of its own. It is therefore a phrase. This phrase is object of the verb expect and hence does the work of a Noun. It is therefore a Noun Phrase.

The second group of words, that I shall get a prize, contains a Subject and a Predicate of its own. It is therefore a clause. This Clause is the object of the verb expect and so does the work of a Noun. We therefore call it a Noun Clause,

Now examine the sentence.

That you have come pleases me.

Here the Clause, That you have come, is the Subject of the verb pleases.

It therefore does the work of a Noun, and is what we call a Noun Clause.

Def :- A Noun Clause is a group of words which contains a Subject and a Predicate of its own, and does the work of a Noun.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

Exercise 31.

Point out the Noun Clauses in the following sentences:-

1. I often wonder how you are getting on.
2. I fear that I shall fail.
3. He replied that he would come.
4. Do you deny that you stole the watch?
5. I thought that it would be a fine day.
6. That you should cheat me hurts me.
7. No one knows who he is.
8. He saw that the clock had stopped.
9. That you should say this is very strange.
10. I don't see how you can get out of this mess.
11. I earn whatever I can.

12. I do not know what he wants.
13. There were no complaints except that the day was too hot.
14. I went to see what had happened,
15. I do not understand how it all happened.
16. Pay careful attention to what I am going to say.
17. It grieved me to hear that she was ill.
18. I want to know how far it is from here.
19. Where we were to lodge that night was the problem.
20. He begged that his life might be spared.
21. I think you have made a mistake.
22. Can you guess what I want?
23. How the burglar got in is a mystery.
24. It is uncertain whether he will come.
25. I do not know what he will do.

Exercise 32.

Complete the following by adding suitable Noun Clauses:-

1. I cannot understand ---.
2. They all said ---.
3. I think ---.
4. This is just ---.
5. He told me ---.
6. --- is a well known fact.
7. Do you know ---?
8. I wonder ---.
9. I do not know ---.
10. Please show me ---.
11. --- is quite certain.
12. I feel certain ---.
13. Tell him ---.
14. Will you tell me ---?
15. His father was anxious ---.
16. You forget ---.
17. It is certain ---.
18. Have you heard ---?
19. He was pleased with ---.

Exercise 33.

In each of the following sentences replace the words in italics by suitable Noun Clauses:-

1. The time of his coming no one can guess.
2. I heard of his success.
3. The reason of his failure will never be known.
4. I predict a change in the weather.
5. The jury believed the man guilty.
6. We expect an improvement in business.
7. Who can doubt the truth of his statement ?
8. I know him to be trustworthy.
9. I do not believe the account given by him.
10. He confessed his guilt.
11. He described the attack on the camp.
12. The place of their meeting was known to the police.
13. The sailor told us the direction of the wind.
14. His arrival was quite unexpected.
15. His friends hoped for his success.
16. I know your great regard for him.

Exercise 34.

In each of the following sentences replace each Noun Clause by a Noun or Noun Phrase:-

1. I hope that I shall be there in time.
2. He is sure that we will win the match.
3. I remarked that it was a fine day.
4. They do not know where he is concealed.
5. The police must know where he is living.
6. I believe what he says.
7. Tell me what you think about this.
8. The doctor is hopeful that she will soon recover.
9. It is to be regretted that he retired from the world so early in life.
10. I do not believe what he says.
11. He showed how the problem was done.
12. It seems that he is a sharper.
13. He does not know where I live.
14. Tell me why you did this.
15. It is not known who has written this book.
16. The law will punish whosoever is guilty.

25. We have now seen that there are three kinds of Clauses:-

- (1) Adverb Clauses which do the work of Adverbs.
- (2) Adjective Clauses which do the work of Adjectives.
- (3) Noun Clauses which do the work of Nouns.

26. Examine the following sentences, and notice the work done by the Clause in each:-

1. I knew where I could find him.
2. I went to the place where I could find him
3. I went where I could find him.

In sentence 1, the Clause does the work of a Noun, and is the Object of the verb know.
In sentence 2, the Clause does the work of an Adjective, and qualifies the noun place.
In sentence 3, the Clause does the work of an Adverb, and modifies the verb went.

We thus see that the same Clause may be a Noun Clause in one sentence, an Adjective Clause in another, and an Adverb Clause in yet another.

It is therefore clear that we cannot say what kind of Clause a Clause is unless we carefully examine the work that it does in a sentence.

Exercise 35.

Pick out the clause in each of the following sentences, and say what kind of clause it is, and with what word it is connected:-

1. Come when you like.
2. I know the man who is here.
3. He says that he met your brother.
4. The hand that rocks the cradle rules the world.
5. Before I die I intend to see Venice.
6. Let us rejoice as we go forward.
7. I was reading a book which I had read before.
8. Perhaps he thinks that I am a fool.
9. As I drew near I saw a very curious sight.
10. Where are the friends whom I knew?
11. Can a man live whose soul is dead?
12. I think that he will die.
13. I want to find the man who did this.
14. He made a vow that he would fast for a week.
15. Have you heard that Rama has won the prize?
16. It was not the vizier whom the king suspected.
17. He admitted that he wrote the letter.
18. That he will do it, I have no doubt.
19. I know the place which you mention.
20. That such a thing could happen, I do not believe.
21. When he heard this he turned very pale.
22. Have you seen the horse that he has bought?
23. My father hopes that you will visit us.
24. He behaved as a brave man should do.
25. I will wait until the next train comes.
26. The general feared that he would be surrounded.
27. He ate when he was hungry.
28. Since he has been in hospital he has improved greatly.
29. As I was going in my father came out.
30. There came a time when he was tired of waiting.
31. He spoke of a time when wars should cease.

32. They live where the climate is good.
33. I know a place where roses grow.
34. They have gone to a land whither few travellers go.
35. The wind bloweth whither it listen.
36. They returned whence they had come.

37. The swallows will return to the country whence such birds migrate.
38. Let none follow me to the retreat whither I now depart.
39. I refer to the year when the monsoon failed.
40. This is not the sort of place where you'll get rich in a hurry.
41. Sadly they returned to the prison whence they had so hopefully set forth that morning.
42. You will always regret the day when you did this.
43. Another occupies the seat where once I sat.
44. He has gone to that bourne whence no traveller returns.

Exercise 36.

In each of the following sentences write a Clause in place of the words in italics, and say, whether the Clause is a Noun Clause, an Adjective Clause, or an Adverb Clause:-

1. He cannot find a place to sleep in.
2. The girl with long hair is my cousin.
3. Have you heard the news?
4. In spite of his efforts he failed.
5. He walked slowly to avoid slipping.
6. This is my home.
7. He cried aloud for joy.
8. I am surprised at your question.
9. He works hard for a living.
10. Being lame he has to use crutches.
11. The sun having set, the army stopped to rest.
12. I heard of his arrival.
13. The duration of the war is uncertain.
14. His remarks were not received with approval.
15. He declared his innocence.
16. I am hopeful of his speedy recovery.
17. Did he explain the purpose of his coming?
18. He ordered the traitor to be executed.
19. He remarked on the boy's impudence,
20. His silence proves his guilt.
21. I cannot tell you the date of my return.
22. His share in the plot was suspected.
23. He speaks like a born orator,
24. Under existing conditions railway travel is expensive.
25. He is not so foolish as to accept your offer,
26. In my old home we had many fruit trees.
27. I promise you a holiday on condition of your good behaviour.

CHAPTER 4

SENTENCES : SIMPLE, COMPOUND, AND COMPLEX

27. Examine the following sentences:-

1. His courage won him honour.
2. The moon was bright and we could see our way.
3. Night came on and rain fell heavily and we all got very wet.
4. They rested when evening came.
5. As the boxers advanced into the ring, the people said they would not allow them to fight.
6. Anil called at 5.30 and I told him that you had gone out.

We see that sentence 1 has only one Subject and one Predicate, Such a sentence is called a Simple Sentence.

Def: - A Simple sentence is one which has only one Subject and one Predicate.

[Or] A simple sentence is one which has only one Subject and one Predicate.

Sentence 2 consists of two parts :

- (i) The moon was bright.
- (ii) We could see our way.

These two parts are joined by the Co-ordinating Conjunction and.

Each part contains a Subject and a Predicate of its own. Each part is what we call a Clause.

We further notice that each Clause makes good sense by itself, and hence could stand by itself as a separate sentence. Each Clause is therefore independent of the other or of the same order or rank, and is called a Principal or Main Clause.

A sentence, such as the second, which is made up of Principal or Main Clauses, is called a Compound Sentence.

Sentence 3 consists of three Clauses of the same order or rank. In other words, sentence 3 consists of three Principal or Main Clauses, viz:

- (i) Night came on
- (ii) Rain fell heavily
- (iii) We all got very wet. Such a sentence is also called a Compound sentence.

Def:- A Compound sentence is one made up of two or more Principal or Main Clauses.

Note:- The term Double is now used for a sentence which consists of two principal or main clauses, and the term Multiple for a sentence of more than two principal or main clauses.

Sentence 4 consists of two parts:-

- (7) They rested.
- (ii) When evening came.

Each part contains a Subject and a Predicate of its own, and forms part of a large sentence. Each part is therefore a Clause.

We further notice that the Clause, They rested, makes good sense by itself, and hence could stand by itself as a complete sentence. It is therefore called the Principal or Main Clause.

The Clause, when evening came, cannot stand by itself and make good sense. It is dependent on the Clause, they rested. It is therefore called a Dependent or Subordinate Clause.

A sentence, such as the fourth, is called a Complex Sentence.

Sentence 5 consists of three Clauses:-

- (i) The people said. (Main Clause).
- (ii) As the boxers advanced into the ring. (Subordinate Adverb Clause.)
- (iii) They would not allow them to fight. (Subordinate Noun Clause.)

Such a sentence is also called a Complex sentence.

Def:- A Complex sentence consists of one Main Clause and one or more Subordinate Clauses.

Sentence 6 consists of three Clauses:-

- (i) Anil called at 5.30 (Main Clause)
- (ii) I met him (Main Clause)
- (iii) That you had gone out (Subordinate Noun Clause)

Such a sentence is also called a Compound sentence.

In addition to two or three Main clauses, a compound Sentence sometimes includes one or more subordinate Clauses.

28. Look at the following Compound sentences, and notice the Co-ordinating Conjunctions joining clauses of equal rank:-

- I shall do it now or I shall not do it at all.
- He gave them no money nor did he help them in any way.
- He threw the stone but it missed the dog.
- He neither obtains success nor deserves it.
- He is either mad or he has become a criminal.
- I both thanked him and rewarded him.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

Exercise 37.

State which of the following sentences are Compound, and which are Complex. In the case of a Compound sentence separate the co-ordinating clauses of which it is composed, and mention the conjunction, connecting these clauses. If a sentence is Complex divide it into its clauses, and state the Principal Clause and the Subordinate Clause or clauses:-

1. The horse reared and the rider was thrown.
2. Walk quickly, else you will not overtake him.
3. The town in which I live is very large.
4. I called him, but he gave me no answer.
5. I agree to your proposals, for I think them reasonable.
6. I went because I was invited.
7. Either he is drowned or some passing ship has saved him.
8. I returned home because I was tired.
9. They always talk who never think.
10. He came oftener than we expected.
11. He blushes; therefore he is guilty.
12. A guest is unwelcome when he stays too long.
13. Whatever you do, do well.
14. He must have done his duty, for he is a conscientious man.
15. He rushed into the field, and foremost fighting fell.
16. Man proposes, but God disposes.
17. Where ignorance is bliss, 'tis folly to be wise.
18. Listen carefully and take notes.
19. The heavens declare, the glory of God; and the firmament showeth His handiwork.
20. He tried hard, but he did not succeed.
21. She must weep or she will die.
22. They serve God well who serve His creatures.

23. Man is guided by reason, and beast by instinct.
24. Quarrels would not last long if the fault were only on one side.
25. God made the country and man made the town.
26. He trudged on, though he was very tired.
27. There was one philosopher who chose to live in a tub.
28. The Commons passed the bill, but the Lords threw it out.
29. Tell me the news as you have heard.
30. He that has most time has none to lose.
31. Your arguments are weighty; still they do not convince me.
32. Everything comes, if a man will only work and wait.
33. The same day went Jesus out of the horse, and sat by the sea-side.
34. We must eat to live, but we should not live to eat.
35. Govern your passions or they will govern you.

36. They [rats] fought the dogs, and killed the cats.
And bit the babies in the cradles,
And ate the cheese out of the vats.
And licked the soup from the cook's own ladles.

37. My heart leaps up when I behold
A rainbow in the sky.

CHAPTER 5

MORE ABOUT NOUN CLAUSES

29. We have seen that there are three kinds of Subordinate Clauses:-
The Noun Clause, the Adjective Clause, and the Adverb Clause.

We have also seen that a Noun Clause is a subordinate clause which does the work of a noun in a Complex sentence.

30. Since a Noun Clause does the work of a Noun in a Complex sentence, it can be:-

1. The Subject of a verb.
2. The Object of a transitive verb.
3. The Object of a preposition.
4. In Apposition to a Noun or Pronoun.
5. The Complement of a verb of incomplete predication.

31. In each of the following Complex sentences, the Noun Clause is the Subject of a verb:-

That you should say so surprises me.
That it would rain seemed likely.
What he said was true,
When I shall return is uncertain.
How he could assist his friend was his chief concern.
Why he left is a mystery.
Whether we can start to-morrow seems uncertain.

32. In each of the following Complex sentences, the Noun Clause is the Object of a transitive verb:-

He says that he won't go.
I hoped that it was true.
She denied that she had written the letter.
I cannot tell what has become of him.
I do not know when I shall return.
I asked the boy how old he was.
Tell me why you did this.
Tell me where you live.

No one knows who he is.

I earn whatever I can, Ask if he is at home.

33. In each of the following Complex sentences, the Noun Clause is the Object of a preposition:-

Pay careful attention to what I am going to say.

There is no meaning in what you say.

There were no complaints except that the day was too hot.

34. In each of the following Complex sentences, the Noun Clause is in Apposition to a Noun or Pronoun:-

Your statement that you found the money in the street will not be believed.

His belief that some day he would succeed cheered him through many disappointments.

You must never forget this, that honesty is the best policy.

It is feared that he will not come.

It was unfortunate that you were absent.

35. In each of the following Complex sentences, the Noun Clause is used as the Complement of a verb of incomplete predication:-

- My belief is that he will not come.
- Her constant prayer was that the child might live.
- His great fear is that he may fail.
- My wish is that I may please you.
- Their request will be that they may be allowed to resign.
- Life is what we make it.
- This is where I live.

36. A Clause coming after a construction consisting of an intransitive verb (particularly the verb to be) and an adjective does the work of a noun and is, therefore, treated as a Noun Clause.

In each of the following Complex Sentences, the Noun Clause comes after an intransitive verb construction:-

The child was afraid that he would fall down.

All of us are keen that you should succeed.

They felt sorry that they lost the match.

The patient was sure that he would recover.

She did not seem hopeful that he would arrive.

It will be seen that the preposition of, about or for necessary to connect the intransitive verb construction to the succeeding Noun Clause in each of the above sentences is omitted. If we put a noun or a gerund instead of the Clause, we would say afraid of, keen about, sorry for, sure of, hopeful of and the noun or gerund would be the object of the preposition in each case. The Noun Clause in each of the Complex Sentences may also be regarded as the object of the missing preposition after the intransitive verb construction. However, such Noun Clauses are often said to be used adverbially.

Note:- From the above, examples it will be seen that a Noun Clause is generally introduced by the subordinating Conjunction that. Sometimes, however, the Conjunction that is omitted; as,
I know (that) he did it.

Exercise 38.

Write down a dozen Complex sentences, each containing a Noun Clause. Make the Noun Clause the Subject in the first three, the Object in the next three, and in Apposition to a Noun or Pronoun in the next three. Use the Noun Clause predicatively in the last three.

Exercise 39.

Point out the Noun Clause and say whether it is the Subject of some verb, or the Object of some verb, or the Complement of some verb, or in Apposition to some noun or pronoun, or the Object of some preposition:-

1. Tell me how you found that out.
 2. That he will succeed is certain.
 3. I think you have made a mistake.
 4. She says her mother is ill.
 5. How long I shall stay here is doubtful.
 6. I did not know that he had come.
 7. It is clear that he was guilty.
 8. I do not understand how it all happened.
 9. Can you tell who wrote Shakuntala?
 10. All depends on how it is done.
 11. Do you deny that you stole the purse?
 12. The law will punish whosoever is guilty.
 13. I think I know your face.
 14. Ask if dinner is ready.
 15. The report that he was killed is untrue.
 16. He was very hopeful that he would succeed.
 17. Do whatever you think right.
 18. I don't see how you can get out of this mess.
 19. Do you know when the train will arrive?
 20. Whoever came was made welcome.
 21. I understand you want a situation.
 22. My verdict is that the prisoners shall die.
 23. I cannot express how sorry I am.
 24. They guessed what he meant.
 25. I am afraid that she will be angry.
 26. Will you explain why you behaved so?
 27. No one can tell how this will end.
 28. The truth is that we have been deceived.
 29. It is not clear who has done this.
 30. I do not know how I can deal with this rascal.
 31. I did not know whether I should laugh or cry,
 32. We are desirous that you should succeed.
37. Sometimes, instead of a Noun Clause introduced by that, the Accusative with the Infinitive is used.
1. (a) He thought that he was safe there,
(b) He thought himself to be safe there.
 2. (a) I believed that he was a true friend,
(b) I believed him to be a true friend.
 3. (a) This proved that she man had stolen the horse,
(b) This proved the man to have stolen the horse.

4. (a) We know that Rama is alive.
(b) We know Rama to be alive.

CHAPTER 6

MORE ABOUT ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

38. As we have seen, an Adjective Clause in a Complex sentence is a subordinate clause which does the work of an Adjective, and so qualifies some noun or pronoun in the main clause.

An Adjective Clause is introduced by a Relative Pronoun or by a Relative Adverb; as,
Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.
He is the man whom we all respect.
The time when the boat leaves is not yet fixed.
The house where the accident occurred is nearby.
The reason why I did it is obvious.

39. Sometimes, however, a Relative Pronoun introduces a Coordinate clause; as,
I met Rama, who (= and he) gave me your message.

Here we are using the Relative Pronoun who to introduce a coordinate clause.

[It might appear, at first sight, that the clause, who gave me your message, is an Adjective clause and therefore Subordinate. It will be seen that this is not the case however, for it in no way identifies or describes Rama.

In the sentence,
He is the boy who broke the window.

the clause, who broke the window, clearly identifies and describes the boy, and is therefore an Adjective clause.]

40. Below are further examples of who (and which) used to introduce a co-ordinate clause.

1. I met Mr. Joshi, who (= and he) thereupon shook hands with me.
2. The prisoner was taken before the Captain, who (= and he) condemned him to instant death.
3. He gave me a message, which (- and it) is this.
4. He released the bird, which (= and it) at once flew away.

41. The Relative Pronoun or the Relative Adverb, introducing an Adjective clause, is sometimes understood, and not expressed; as,

1. Eat all --- you can.

[Here the Relative Pronoun that is understood.]

2. I saw a man --- I know.

[Here the Relative Pronoun whom is understood.]

3. Where's the book --- he left for me ?

[Here the Relative Pronoun which is understood.]

4. On the day --- you pass the examination I shall give you a reward.

[Here the Relative Adverb when is understood.]

5. The reason --- I have come is to ask for my money.

[Here the relative Adverb why is understood.]

42. In order English but was used as a relative pronoun as in the sentences below. In such cases but is equivalent to a relative pronoun followed by not.

1. There was not a woman present but wept to hear such news.

[That is, who did not weep to hear such news.]

2. And not a man of the three hundred at Thermopylae but died at his post.
[That is, who did not die at his post.]

3. Nor is there a man here but loved our Caesar. [That is, who did not love our
Caesar.]

4. There was not a widow but longed to die upon the pyre of her husband.
[That is, who did not long to die, etc.]

5. There is no fireside but has one vacant chair. [That has not one vacant
chair.]

43. Note that than is sometimes used as a Preposition before a Relative Pronoun in the
Adjective Clause; as,

They elected Rama than whom no better boy ever went to school. We will follow Brutus
than whom Rome knows no nobler son. It was a blow than which no crueller was ever
struck.

44. The infinitive with to is often used as the equivalent of an Adjective Clause.

1. (a) Give me some food which I may eat.

(b) Give me some food to eat.

2. (a) He has no boots which he can wear,

(b) He has no boots to wear.

3. (a) The doctor has given me medicine which I must take.

(b) The doctor has given me medicine to take.

4. (a) I have work which I must do.

(b) I have work to do.

5.(a) His mother gave him Rs. 10 which he might put in his money-box.

(b) His mother gave him Rs. 10 to put in his money-box.

A work from S, CHANP & COMPANY LTD.

Exercise 40.

Pick out each Adjective Clause in the following sentences and say which noun or pronoun in the main clause it qualifies:-

1. This is the house that Jack built.

2. He that climbs too high is sure to fall.

3. She sleeps the sleep that knows no waiting.

4. We obeyed the order the teacher gave us,

5. Servants that are honest are trusted.

6. They never fail who die in a great cause.

7. We love those who love us.

8. The moment which is lost is lost for ever.

9. I have a little shadow which goes in and out with me,

10. It is an ill wind that blows nobody good.

11. Youth is the time when the seeds of character are sown.

12. It was the schooner Hesperus that sailed the wintry sea.

13. They never pardon who have done the wrong.

14. He has a son who has made a name for himself.

15. A friend who helps you in time of need is a real friend.

16. All that glitters is not gold.

17. He could not answer the question I asked him.

18. He laughs best who laughs last.

19. All the blessings we enjoy come from God.

20. They that are whole have no need of the physician.

21. Little good work can be expected from men who are great boasters.

22. The plan you propose is a very good one.

23. The night is long that never finds the day.

24. It is a long lane that has no turning.
25. He gave me everything I asked-for.
26. He failed in everything that he laid his hands upon.
27. He has tricks that remind me of his father.
28. I duly received the message you sent me.
29. The fox saw the grapes which hung over the garden wall.
30. The bark that held a prince went down.
31. He that is down need fear no fall.
32. We are such stuff as dreams are made on.
33. The man that hath no music in his soul is fit for treason.
34. True love's the gift which God has given to man alone beneath the heaven.
35. Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot
O'er the grave where our hero we buried,
36. Who lives longest sees the most.
37. Often I think of the beautiful town
That is seated by the sea.

Exercise 41.

Make ten sentences, each containing an Adjective Clause, in which a Relative Pronoun is understood

Exercise 42.

Make ten sentences, each containing an Adjective Clause, in which a Relative Adverb is understood.

CHAPTER 7

MORE ABOUT ADVERB CLAUSES

45. We have seen that an Adverb clause is a subordinate clause which does the work of an Adverb. It may, therefore, modify some verb, adjective, or Adverb in the main clause; as,

Strike the iron while it is hot.

You are taller than I thought.

He ran so quickly that he soon overtook me.

46. Adverb clauses are of many kinds and may be classified as Adverb Clauses of:-

1. Time
2. Place.
3. Purpose.
4. Cause.
5. Condition.
6. Result.
7. Comparison.
8. Supposition or Concession.

1. Adverb Clauses of time

47. Adverb Clauses of time are introduced by the Subordinating Conjunctions whenever, while, after, before, since, as, etc.

When you have finished your work you may go home.

I will do it when I think fit.

Don't talk while she is singing.

While I command this ship there will be good discipline.

He came after night had fallen.

After the law had been passed this form of crime ceased.

Do it before you forget.

Before you go bring me some water.

I have not been well since I returned from Chennai.
There was silence as the leader spoke.
As he came into the room all rose to their feet.
The doctor always comes whenever he is sent for.
They were commanded to wait till the signal was given.
The world always will be the same so long as men are men.
As soon as he heard the news he wrote to me.
Just as he entered the room the clock struck.
No sooner did he see us than he disappeared.

Exercise 43.

Write five sentences containing Adverb clauses of time.

2. Adverb Clauses of Place

48. Adverb Clauses of Place are introduced by the Subordinating Conjunctions where and whereas,

I have put it where I can find it again.

They can stay where they are.

Where you live I will live.
He led the caravan wherever he wanted to go.
You can put it wherever you like.
Let him be arrested wherever he may be found.

In older English whence and whither were also used.

Go quickly whence you came.
The wind bloweth whither it listeth.

Exercise 44.

Write three sentences containing Adverb clauses of place.

3. Adverb Clauses of Purpose

49. Adverb clauses of purpose are introduced by the subordinate conjunctions so that, in order that and lest. (In order that and lest are used in a formal style.)

I will give you a map so that you can find the way.
We eat so that we may live.
The UNO was formed in order that countries might discuss world problems better.
He was extra polite to his superiors lest something adverse should be written into his records.
'Sleep not lest your Lord come in the night.'

The conjunction that occurred in older English:

He drew the sword that he might defend himself.
'Come hither that I may bless thee.'

Exercise 45.

Write three sentences containing Adverb clauses of purpose.

4. Adverb Clauses of Cause or Reason

50. Adverb Clauses of Cause or Reason are introduced by the Subordinating conjunctions because, as, since, that.

Because I like you, I shall help you.
I did it because I wanted to.
I did not buy it because I did not like the look of it.
He thinks, because he is rich, he can buy justice.
Since you are so clever you will be able to explain this.
Since your father is not at home, I will ask you to take the message.
Since you swear to serve me faithfully, I will employ you.
I am glad that you like it.

He was very pleased that you have passed.
As he was not there, I spoke to his brother.

Exercise 46.

Write five sentences containing Adverb clauses of cause or reason.

5. Adverb Clauses of Condition

51. Adverb Clauses of Condition are introduced by the Subordinating Conjunctions if whether, unless.

If I like it, I shall buy it. Come if you wish to.
If it rains we shall stay at home.
If you have tears, prepare to shed them now.
You must go whether you hear from him or not.
Whether the Rajah gives him blows or money, he will speak the truth.
Unless you work harder you will fail.
I shan't pay it unless he sends me the bill again.
I will forgive you on condition that you do not repeat the offence.

Note 1:- Sometimes the Subordinating Conjunction is omitted in Adverb Clauses of Condition; as,

- Had I not seen this with my own eyes I would not have believed it.
- Had I the wings of a bird I would fly away.
- He would be happier were he honester.
- Were an angel to tell me such a thing of you, I would not believe it.
- What would you answer did I ask you such a question?

Note 2:- Clauses of Condition are sometimes introduced by a Relative Pronoun, or Adjective, or Adverb (without any antecedent); as,

- Whatever happens keep calm?
- Don't annoy him whatever you do.
- Whatever may be the result, I shall refuse.
- Whichever road we take we shall be too late.
- However cleverly you may cheat, you will be found at last

Exercise 47.

Write five sentences containing Adverb Clauses of Condition.

6. Adverb Clauses of Result or Consequence

52. Adverb Clauses of Result or Consequence are introduced by the Subordinating Conjunction that. Frequently so or such precedes it in the Principal Clause.

They fought so bravely that the enemies were driven off. / So bravely did they fight that the enemy were driven off. (Literary)

He is such a good man that all respect him.

So great a fire raged that London was burnt down.

The Romans built in such a way that their walls are still standings.

He spoke in such a low voice that few could hear him.

So terrible a disease broke out that very few of the people survived.

Very heavy rain fell so that the rivers were soon in flood.

Laws were quickly passed so that this abuse was checked.

He behaved in such a manner that his reputation suffered.

So cold was it that many died.

Note:- The Subordinating Conjunction that is often dropped in informal English.

He was so weak he could not speak.

I am so deaf I can not hear thunder.

It was so late I waited no longer.

He is so old he can hardly walk.

It was so small I could not see it.

Exercise 48.

Write five sentences containing Adverb Clauses-of Result or Consequence.

7. Adverb Clauses of Comparison

53. Adverb Clauses of Comparison are of two kinds:-

- (i) Adverb Clauses of Comparison of Degree.
- (ii) Adverb Clauses of Comparison of Manner.

54. Adverb Clauses of Comparison of Degree are introduced by the Subordinating Conjunction *than*, or by the Relative Adverb *as*;
as,

He is older than he looks.
No one can run faster than Rama.
It is later than I thought.
You must work harder than I do.
He is as stupid as he is lazy.
He is not so clever as you think.

Note:- The verb of the Adverb Clause of Comparison of Degree is often understood and not expressed ; *as*,

Nobody knows it better than I [do].
Few are better leaders than he [is],
You like curry better than I [like it].
It will happen as sure as death [is sure].
Not many know the truth of this better than you [know it].

Exercise 49.

Write five sentences containing Adverb Clauses of Comparison of Degree.

55. Adverb Clauses of Comparison of Manner are introduced by the Relative Adverb *as* ;
as;
You may do as you please.
It all ended as I expected.
As you have made your bed so you must lie on it.
As he has lived so will he die.
As the twig is bent the branch will grow.

Exercise 50.

Write five sentences containing Adverb Clauses of Comparison of Manner.

8. Adverb Clauses of Supposition or Concession

56. Adverb Clauses of Supposition or Concession are introduced by the Subordinating Conjunctions though, although, even if.

Though I am poor I am honest.

Though the heavens fall, justice must be done.

Though He slay me yet will I love Him.

He set sail though the storm threatened.

Although troops had marched all day they fought bravely all night.

Although I forbade this you have done it.

I shall be able to get in although I have no ticket.

Even if it rains I shall come.

Exercise 51.

Write five sentences containing Adverb Clauses of Supposition or Concession.

Exercise 52.

Pick out the Adverb clauses in the following sentences, tell the kind of each clause and point out the word in the main clause which it modifies:-

1. Forgive us as we forgive our enemies.
2. We sow so that we may reap.
3. He did it as I told him.
4. I couldn't be angry with him, if I tried.
5. He arrived as we were setting out.
6. If this story were false, what should you do?
7. It is ten hours since I had nothing to eat.
8. I make friends wherever I go.
9. At Rome we must do as the Romans.
10. If I were you I would do it at once.
11. The general was as good as his word.
12. My sight is as keen as yours.
13. Some seeds fell where there was no earth.
14. Since you say so, I must believe it.
15. Stand still if you value your life.
16. He labours that he may become rich.
17. He lost more than he could afford.
18. It is so simple that a child can understand it.
19. He kept on writing as though, he did not hear.
20. Boy as he was, he was chosen king.
21. He rides as a cowboy rides.
22. I will die before I submit.
23. He was caught in a shower as he was returning from school.
24. He speaks better than he writes.
25. He came in while I was out.
26. After the vote was taken the meeting broke up.
27. He wept as if he had been a child.
28. Apollo was worshipped as long as the Roman Empire lasted.
29. He consoled the unfortunate mother as best he might.
30. He ran so fast that I could not overtake him.
31. He knows that inasmuch as I have told him.
32. The younger man has more money than brains.
33. Since you desire it, I will look into the matter.
34. They set a strong guard, lest any one should escape.
35. He succeeded although his success was not expected.
36. The earth is larger than the moon.
37. It was dark when the cannonading stopped all of a sudden.

38. His pity gave ere charity began.
39. Wherever I went was my dear dog Tray.
40. He felt as if the ground were slipping beneath his feet.
41. Some people act as though they could do no wrong.
42. Fools rush in where angels fear to tread.
43. He dared not stir, lest he should be seen.
44. The movement was checked before it was fairly started.
45. A glutton lives so that he may eat.
46. Everything happened exactly as had been expected.
47. Robinson Crusoe was puzzled when he discovered the print of a foot on the sand.
48. Enough is as good as a feast.
49. He finished the work as the clock struck five.

A work from S, CHANP & COMPANY LTD.

50. As soon as you stand there, this young lady is your lawful wedded wife.
51. It's dull in our town since my playmates left.
52. Whilst I live, thou shalt never want a friend to stand by thee.
53. No sooner did this idea enter his head, than it carried conviction with it
54. They have gone ahead with the plan, although there is widespread public opposition.
55. They were commanded to wait till the signal was given.
56. Rich as he is, one would scarcely envy him.
57. Open rebuke is better than secret love.
58. Have you turned detective, that you keep your eye on me like this?
59. He had not read half a dozen pages, when the expression of his face began to change.
60. My eldest son was bred at Oxford, as I intended him for the learned profession.
61. His behaviour was such that everybody liked him.
62. I had scarcely taken orders a year, before I began to think seriously of matrimony.
63. If you have tears, prepare to shed them now.
64. The world always will be the same, as long as men are men.

Exercise 53.

Use each of the following clauses in a sentence, and say what work it does in your sentence:-

1. that he was tired
2. where he was born
3. as he was told
4. what you say
5. whosoever is guilty
6. who laughs last
7. because he is generous
8. since you say so
9. as he deserved
10. before it was too late
11. as soon as he heard the news
12. that he soon overtook me
13. where he had left it
14. how old he was
15. if you are diligent
16. because I was tired
17. what has become of him
18. when the train will arrive
19. who did it
20. whatever you think right
21. since I returned from Lahore
22. how this will end
23. what he wants
24. as he could

25. as he was not there
26. if I were you
27. that the streets were flooded
28. as I told him
29. before I submitted
30. that he is a millionaire
31. as she is beautiful
32. what you want
33. when his father died
34. as it was raining
35. as you please
36. than you are [strong]
37. although he is not rich
38. who works hard
39. that we shall win
40. when I shall return
41. if I had not helped you
42. although they fought most valiantly
43. when the cat is away
44. while it is hot
45. who help themselves
46. while the sun shines
47. till you are out of the wood
48. that wears a crown
49. who live in glass houses
51. that blows nobody good
53. as dreams are made on
55. where angels fear to tread
50. where ignorance is bliss
52. no sooner did he see me
54. that has no turning
56. so that we may live

Exercise 54.

Use the following subordinate clauses in as many different ways as possible by attaching them to suitable principal clauses:-

1. where he was buried
2. when the train will arrive.
3. where he had left it.
4. who did it.
5. why he did it.
6. so that he might succeed in life.
7. whom he had met.
8. when the monsoon failed.

Exercise 55.

Complete the following sentences by supplying appropriate connecting words:-

1. Small service is true service --- it lasts.
2. It is a great loss to a man --- he cannot laugh.
3. We there met boy --- had lost his way.
4. It is the common doom of man --- he must eat his bread by the sweat of his brow.
5. Fit words are better --- fine ones.
6. He makes no friend, --- never made a foe.
7. The moment --- is lost is lost for ever.
8. Forgive us our debts --- we forgive our debtors.
9. The man --- stands by me in trouble I won't bid him go till the sun shines again.
10. Money ---- is easily earned is soon spent.
11. --- somewhat pompous, he was an entertaining companion.
12. --- Poetry takes me up so entirely --- I scarce see what passes under my nose.
13. He --- fights and runs away, lives to fight another day.
14. Never refuse to entertain a man in your heart --- all the world is talking against him.
15. --- you would be healthy, be good.
16. --- I am dead, my dearest, sing no sad songs for me.
17. A man has no more right to say an uncivil thing --- to act one.
18. --- the blind lead the blind, both shall fall into the ditch.
19. --- this be madness --- there is method in it.
20. Consider the lilies --- they grow.
21. --- he has a car, he often goes to the office on foot.
22. --- we approached the house, we heard the sound of music.
23. I have not been well --- I returned from Delhi.
24. These are the books --- I ordered last week.
25. They live --- their fathers lived before them.
26. No one can tell --- this will end.
27. he had gone I remembered --- he was.
28. A man --- loses his temper continually is a nuisance.
29. Youth is the time --- the seeds of character are sown.
30. The house --- he was born lies in ruins.
31. --- my mother died I was very young.
32. Do not halloo --- you are out of the wood.
33. I shall see you tomorrow, --- we will talk the matter over.
34. They always talk never think.
35. I did not recognize him --- he told me --- he was.
36. They serve God well --- serve His creatures.
37. I have a little shadow --- goes in and out with me.
38. I met a boy --- told me --- I could find you.
39. We learn, --- we may be able to make our way in the world.
40. --- he was not there, I spoke to his brother.

41. A vessel that once gets a crack, --- it may be cunningly mended, will never stand such rough usage --- a whole one.
42. --- it journeys through space, the earth is not alone; spinning round with it is the moon.
43. Other planets have moons --- ours is very large compared to the earth.
44. I resolved --- I would say nothing --- I knew the worst.
45. --- he was born, --- brought him up, and --- he lived, we are not told.
46. Nothing can describe the confusion of thought --- I felt --- I sank into the water.
47. --- he was a strict disciplinarian he was loved by all --- I served under him.

48. One great reason --- we are insensible to the goodness of the Creator is the fact --- his bounty is so extensive.

49. Passengers are warned --- it is dangerous to lean out of the window --- the train is in motion.

CHAPTER 8

ANALYSIS OF COMPLEX SENTENCES (Clause Analysis)

57. Usually when a complex or compound sentence is given for analysing, detailed-analysis is not required; the student is asked to give clause analysis, that is, he is asked to break up a given- sentence into its several clauses and show their relation to one another.

58. In analysing a Complex sentence, the first step is to find out the Principal or Main Clause.

The next step is to find out the Subordinate Clause or Clauses, showing the relation which each Clause bears to the Principal Clause.

59. Now study carefully the following example of the analysis of a Complex sentence:-
Whenever he heard the question, the old man who lived in that house, answered that the earth is flat.

Complex sentence containing three Subordinate clauses:

1. The old man --- answered (Principal clause).
2. Whenever he heard the question. (Adverb clause of time, modifying answered in 1.)
3. Who lived in that house. (Adjective clause, qualifying man in 1.)
4. That the earth is flat. (Noun clause, object of answered in 1.)

60. Sometimes a Subordinate clause has another Subordinate clause within it; that is, a Subordinate clause has another Subordinate clause dependent on it e.g.,

(A) I think that he destroyed the letter which you sent there.

1. I think -- (Principal clause.)
2. That he destroyed the letter -- (Noun Clause, object of think in 1.)
3. Which you sent there -- (Adjective clause, subordinate to 2, qualifying letter.)

(B) He replied that he worked whenever he liked.

1. He replied -- (Principal clause.)
2. That he worked -- (Noun clause, object of replied in 1.)
3. Whenever he liked -- (Adverb clause, subordinate to 2, modifying worked.)

(C) I know the man who said that this would happen.

1. I know the man -- (Principal clause.)
2. Who said -- (Adjective clause, qualifying man in 1.)

3. That this would happen. (Noun clause, subordinate to 2, object of said.)

61. One afternoon, as in that sultry clime

It is the custom in the summer-time,
With bolted doors and window-shutters closed,
The inhabitants of Atri slept or dozed.
When, suddenly upon their senses fell
The loud alarm of the accusing bell!

Complex sentence, containing two subordinate clauses:

1. One afternoon, with bolted doors and window shutters closed, the inhabitants of Atri slept or dozed. (Principal clause).
2. As in that sultry clime it is the custom in the summer-time. (Adverb clause of manner, modifying slept or dozed in 1.)
3. When, suddenly, upon their senses fell the loud alarm of the accusing bell. (Adverb clause of time, modifying slept or dozed in 1)

62. Below are further examples:

(1) Breathes there the man with soul so dead
Who never to himself hath said,

'This is my own, my native land'? Complex sentence, containing two subordinate clauses:

1. Breathes there the man with soul so dead -- (Principal clause).
2. Who never to himself hath said -- (Adjective clause, qualifying man in 1.)
3. "This is my own, my native land"? (Noun clause, subordinate to 2, object of hath said.)

(2) Everyone who knows you, acknowledges, when he considers the case calmly, that you have been wronged.

Complex sentence, containing three subordinate clauses:-

1. Everyone acknowledges...(Principal clause)
2. Who knows you. (Adjective clause, qualifying one in 1.)
3. When he considers the case calmly, (Adverb clause, modifying acknowledges in 1.)
4. That you have been wronged. (Noun clause, object of acknowledges in 1.)

(3) Do the work that's nearest,
Tho' it's dull at whiles
Helping when you meet them.
Lame dogs over stiles.

Complex sentence, containing three subordinate clauses:-

1. [You] do the work, helping lame dogs over stiles. (Principal clause.)
2. That's nearest. (Adjective clause, qualifying work in 1.)
3. Tho' it's dull at whiles. (Adverb clause of concession, modifying helping in 1.)
4. When you meet them. (Adverb clause of time, modifying helping in 1.)

(4) I knew a man who believed that, if a man were permitted to make the ballads, he need not care who made the laws of a nation.

Complex sentence, containing four subordinate clauses:

1. I knew a man...(Principal clause)
2. Who believed....(Adjective clause, qualifying a man in I.)

3. That he need not care. (Noun clause, subordinate to 2, object of believed)
4. Who made the laws of a nation. (Noun clause, subordinate to 2, object of care.)
5. If a man were permitted to make the ballads. Adverb clause of condition, subordinate to 3, modifying need not care.

(5) The man who can play most heartily when he has the chance of playing, is generally the man who can work most heartily when he must work.

Complex sentence, containing four subordinate clauses:

1. The man is generally the man...(Principal clause.)
2. Who can play most heartily. [Adjective clause, qualifying man (subject) in 1.]
3. When he has the chance of playing. [Adverb clause, subordinate to 2. modifying play.]
4. Who can work most heartily. (Adjective clause, qualifying man (complement) in 1.)
5. When he must work. (Adverb clause, subordinate to 4, modifying work).

(6) Should you be so unfortunate as to suppose that you are a genius, and that things will come to you, it would be well to undeceive yourself as soon as it is possible.

Complex sentence, containing four subordinate Clauses:

1. It would be well to undeceive yourself. (Principal clause).
2. As soon as it is possible. (Adverb clause of time, subordinate to 1.)
3. Should you be so unfortunate as to suppose...(Adverb clause of condition, subordinate to 1.)
4. That you are a genius. (Noun clause. Subordinate to 3, object of to suppose.)
5. And that things will come to you. (Noun clause, co-ordinate with 4, and subordinate to 3, object of to suppose.)

Exercise 56.

Analyse the following sentences:-

1. As my eldest son was bred a scholar. I determined to send him to town, where his abilities might contribute to our support and his own.
2. Clive had been only a few months in the army, when intelligence arrived that peace had been concluded between Great Britain and France.
3. I had a partial father, who gave me a better education than his broken fortune would have allowed.
4. He told us that he had read Milton, in a prose translation, when he was fourteen.
5. With whatever luxuries a bachelor may be surrounded, he will always find his happiness incomplete, unless he has a wife and children.
6. Among the many reasons which make me glad to have been born in England, one of the first is that I read Shakespeare in my mother tongue.
7. He [Pope] professed to have learned his poetry from Dryden. whom, whenever an opportunity was presented, he praised through his whole life with unvaried liberality.
8. We who are fortunate enough to live in this enlightened century hardly realize

how our ancestors suffered from their belief in the existence of mysterious and malevolent beings.

9. We cannot justly interpret the religion of any people, unless we are prepared to admit that we ourselves are liable to error in matters of faith.

10. Milton said that he did not educate his daughters in the languages, because one tongue was enough for a woman.

A work from S, CHANP & COMPANY LTD.

11. The man who does not see that the good of every living creature is his good, is a fool.
12. Nothing can describe the confusion of thought which I felt when I sank into the water.
13. We had in this village, some twenty years ago, a boy whom I well remember, who from his childhood showed a strong liking for bees.
14. Considering that the world is so intricate, we are not to be surprised that science has progressed slowly.
15. You shake my house when you do take the prop
That doth sustain my house.
16. I heard a thousand blended notes
While in a grove I sat reclined.
In that sweet mood when pleasant thoughts
Bring sad thoughts to the mind.
17. Much as we like Shakespeare's comedies, we cannot agree with Dr. Johnson that they are better than his tragedies.
18. Those who look into practical life will find that fortune is usually on the side of the industrious, as the winds and waves are on the side of the best navigators.
19. He who sits from day to day.
Where the prisoned lark is hung.
Heedless of its loudest lay,
Hardly knows that it has sung.
20. History says that Socrates, when he was given the cup of hemlock, continued to talk to the friends who were standing around him as he drank it.
21. I have no sympathy with the poor man I knew, who, when suicides abounded, told me he dared not look at his razor.

CHAPTER 9

ANALYSIS OF COMPOUND SENTENCES (Clause Analysis)

64. A compound sentence is made up of two or more principal or main clauses joined together by a Co-ordinating conjunction and sometimes includes one or more subordinate clauses.

1. The horse reared and the rider was thrown.
[2 main clauses]
2. They were fond of music, played on various kinds of instrument, and indulged in much singing.
[3 main clauses]
3. They asked him how he received the wound, but he refused to answer.
[2 main clauses + 1 subordinate clause]

4. He says what he means, and he means what he says.
[2 main clauses +2 subordinate clauses]

It has been already pointed out (§ 27) that the term Double is now used for a sentence which is made up of two main clauses, and the term Multiple for a sentence of more than two main clauses,

65. In accordance with this new terminology, 1, 3, and 4 are Double sentences, and 2 is a Multiple sentence.

66. The connection between two main clauses of a Compound sentence may be one of the following four kinds:-

(1) Copulative; as

God made the country and man made the town.

Babar was not only a great soldier, he was also a wise ruler.

He cannot speak, nor can he write.

He plays the piano, he sings also.

The innocents were punished as well as the guilty.

Here in each sentence the main clauses are simply coupled together.

(2) Adversative; as,

He is slow, but he is sure.

I did my best, nevertheless I failed.

He is rich, yet he is not happy.

He is vain, still his friends adore him.

Here in each sentence the two main clauses are opposed in meaning to each other.

(3) Alternative or Disjunctive; as,

She must weep, or she will die.

Either he is mad, or he feigns madness.

Neither a borrower, nor a lender be.

Walk quickly, else you will not overtake him.

Here in each sentence the two main clauses are disjoined in meaning, and a choice between them is offered for acceptance.

(4) Illative; as,

He is diligent, therefore he will succeed.

He is unwell, so he cannot attend office.

The angles are equal, consequently the sides are equal

Here in each sentence the second clause draws an inference from the first.

67. Sometimes no connecting word is used to join two main clauses; as,
Temperance promotes health, intemperance destroys it.

Her court was pure; her life serene.

68. Sometimes a Subordinate Conjunction is used to join the clauses of a Compound sentence; as,

I shall see you to-morrow, when (= and then) we can finish the business.

I walked with him to the station, where (= and there) we parted.

69. Compared sentences are often contracted. For example, when the main clauses have:-

(1) A common Subject; as,

He chid their wanderings, but relieved their pain.

= He chid their wanderings, but he relieved their pain.

(2) A common Verb; as,
Some praise the work, and some the architect.

= Some praise the work, and some praise the architect.

70. Study carefully the clause analysis of the following:-

(1) One day Bassanio came to Antonio, and told him that he wisied to repair his fortune by a wealthy marriage with a

lady whom he dearly loved, whose father had left her sole heiress to a large estate.

Analysis:-

This is a Compound or Double sentence, consisting of:-

A. One day Bassanio came to Antonio. (Principal clause).

B. Bassanio told him...(Principal clause co-ordinate with A.)

B1. That he wished to repair his fortune by a wealthy marriage with a lady. (Noun clause, object of told in B.)

b2. Whom he dearly loved. (Adjective clause, subordinate to b1, qualifying lady.)

b3. Whose father had left her sole heiress to a large estate., (Adjective clause, subordinate to b1, qualifying lady, and co-ordinate with b2.)

(2) Before he died, the good Earl of Kent, who had still attended his old master's steps from the first of his daughters' ill-usage to this sad period of his decay, tried to make him understand that it was he who had followed him under the name of Caius; but Lear's care-crazed brain at that time could not comprehend how that could be, or how Kent and Caius could be the same person.

Analysis:- This is a Compound or Double sentence, consisting of:-

A. The good Earl of Kent tried to make him understand...(Principal clause).

a1. Before he died. (Adverb clause, modifying tried in A.)

a2. Who had still-attended his old master's steps from the first of his daughters' ill-usage to this sad period of his decay. (Adjective clause, qualifying Earl of Kent in A.)

a3. That it was he. (Noun clause, object of understand in A.)

a4. Who had followed him under the name of Caius. (Adjective clause, subordinate to a3, qualifying he.)

B. But Lears's care-crazed brain at that time could not comprehend (Principal clause, coordinate with A.)

b1. How that could be. (Noun clause, object of comprehend in B.)

b2. Or how Kent and Caius could be the same person. (Noun clause, object of comprehend in B; co-ordinate with b1.)

Exercise 57.

Analyse the following:-

1. I am satisfied with things as they are; and it will be my pride and pleasure to hand down this country to my children as I received it from those who preceded me.

2. Some politicians of our time lay it down as a self-evident proposition that no people ought to be free till they are fit to use their freedom.

3. He [a gentleman] never speaks of himself except when compelled, never defends himself by a mere retort; he has no ears for slander or gossip, is scrupulous in imputing motives to those who interfere-with him, and interprets everything for the best,

4. Subhash Chandra Bose died before his aim was achieved, and yet he will always be remembered as a great hero, who fought and sacrificed his life for the freedom of the country.

5. The notice which you have been pleased to take of my labours, had it been early, had been kind; but it has been delayed till I am indifferent, and cannot enjoy it.

6. I hope it is no very cynical asperity not to confess obligations where no benefit has been received, or to be unwilling that the public should consider me as owing that to a patron, which Providence has enabled me to do for myself.

7. While I was doing this, I found the tide began to flow, though very calm, and I had the mortification to see my coat, shirt, and waistcoat, which I had left on shore upon the sand, swim away.

8. With reluctance he accepted the invitations of his kindly and faithful Persian friend, who scolded him for refusing meat; but he replied that too much eating led man to commit many sins.

9. Macaulay had wealth and fame, rank and power, and yet he tells us in his biography that he owed the happiest hours of his life to books.

10. A literary education is simply one of many different kinds of education and it is not wise that more than a small percentage of the people of any country should have an exclusively literary education.

11. The way into my parlour is up a winding stair, And I've many curious things to show when you are there.

12. They love to see the flaming forge,
And hear the bellows soar,
And catch the burning sparks that fly.
Like chaff from a threshing floor.

13. The friends who had left came back every one,
And darkest advisers looked bright as the sun.

14. She lived unknown and few could know,
When Lucy ceased to be.

15. Three wives sat up in the lighthouse tower,
And they trimmed the lamps as the sun went down.

16. His hair was yellow as hay.
But threads of a silvery grey
Gleamed in his tawny beard.

Exercise 58.

(Miscellaneous) Analyse the following:-

1. When Abraham sat at his tent door, according to his custom, waiting to entertain strangers, he espied an old man, stooping and leaning on his

staff, weary with age and travel, coming towards him. who was a hundred years of age.

2. When the old man was gone, God called to Abraham and asked him where the stranger was.

3. He replied, I thrust him away because he did not worship Thee.

4. While you are upon Earth enjoy the good things that are here (to that end were they given) and be not melancholy, and wish yourself in heaven.

5. There is no saying shocks me so much as that which I hear very often that a man does not know how lo pass his time.

6. You must observe, my friend, that it is the custom of this country, when a lady or gentleman happens to sing, for the company to sit as mute and as motionless as statues.

7. Mr. Burchell had scarce taken leave, and Sophia consented to dance with the chaplain, when my little ones came running out to tell us that the Squire was come with a crowd of company.

8. I hope it will give comfort to great numbers who are passing through the world in obscurity, when I inform them how easily distinction may be obtained.

9. All who have meant good work with their whole hearts, have done good work, although they may die before they have the time to sign it.

10. We are told that, while still a mere child, he stole away from his playfellows to a vault in St. James's Fields, for the purpose of investigating the cause of a singular echo which he had observed there.

11. The slave who was at his work not far from the place where this astonishing piece of cruelty was committed, hearing the shrieks of the dying person ran to see what was the occasion of them.

12. Every insignificant author fancies it of importance to the world to know that he wrote his book in the country, that he did it to pass away some of his idle hours, that it was published at the importunity of friends, or that his natural temper, studies, or conversation directed him to the choice of his subject.

13. I consider a human soul without education like marble in the quarry, which shows none of its inherent beauties, until the skill of the polisher fetches out the colours, makes the surface shine, discovers every ornamental cloud, spot, and view that run through the body of it.

14. When the Athenians in the war with the Lacedaemonians received many defeats both by sea and land, they sent a message to the oracle of Jupiter Ammon, to ask the reason why they who erected so many temples to the gods, and adorned them with such costly offerings, should be less successful than the Lacedaemonians, who fell so short of them in all these particulars.

15. He that holds fast the golden mean,
And lives contentedly between
The little and the great,
Feels not the wants that pinch the poor,
Nor plagues that haunt the rich man's door,
Embittering all his state.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

CHAPTER 10

TRANSFORMATION OF SENTENCES

71. The student has already learnt that a phrase can be expanded into a clause and a clause contracted into a phrase; that is, the form of a sentence can be changed without changing the meaning. In this chapter we shall show some other ways of changing the form of a sentence.

The conversion or transformation of sentences is an excellent exercise as it teaches variety of expression in writing English.

1. Sentences containing the Adverb “too”

72. We can change the form of a sentence containing the adverb “too”, as shown below:-

1. The news is too good to be true.

The news is so good that it cannot to be true.

2. These mangoes are too cheap to be good.
These mangoes are so cheap that they cannot be good.

3. He drove too fast for the police to catch.
He drove so fast that the police could not catch him. Exercise 59. Rewrite the following sentences so as to get rid of the Adverb 'too':-

1. It is never too late to mend.
2. He is too proud to beg.
3. My heart is too full for words.
4. He was too late to hear the first speech.
5. He is too ignorant for a postman.
6. The boy was too old for whipping.

7. This tree is too high for me to climb.
8. He speaks too fast to be understood.
9. He is far too stupid for such a difficult post.
10. She was sobbing too deeply to make any answer.
11. This fact is too evident to require proof.
12. The work is too much for any man to do single-handed.
13. That shirt is too small for me.
14. The bag was too heavy for me to carry.

2. Interchange of the Degrees of Comparison

73. As the following examples show, it is possible to change the Degree of Comparison of an Adjective or Adverb in a sentence, without changing the meaning of the sentence.

Positive. -- I am as strong as him.

Comparative. -- He is not stronger than me.

Positive. -- This razor is not as sharp as that one.

Comparative. -- That razor is sharper than this one.

Positive. -- Few historians write as interestingly as Joshi.

Comparative. -- Joshi writes more interestingly than most historians.

Positive. -- No other metal is as useful as iron.

Comparative. -- Iron is more useful than any other metal.

Superlative. -- Iron is the most useful of all metals.

Superlative. -- India is the largest democracy in the world.

Comparative. -- India is larger than any other democracy in the world.

Positive. -- No other democracy in the world is as large as India.

Superlative. -- Mumbai is one of the richest cities in India.

Comparative. -- Mumbai is richer than most other cities in India.

Positive. -- Very few cities in India are as rich as Mumbai.

Superlative. -- Usha Kiran is not the tallest of all the buildings in the city.

Comparative. -- Usha Kiran is not taller than some other buildings in the city.

OR

Some other buildings in the city are perhaps taller than Usha Kiran.

positive. -- Some other buildings in the city are at least as tall as Usha Kiran.

OR

Usha Kiran is perhaps not as tall as some other buildings in the city.

Superlative. -- Naomi is not one of the cleverest girls in the class.

Comparative. -- Some girls of the class are cleverer than Naomi.

OR

Naomi is less clever than some other girls of the class.

Positive. -- Naomi is not so clever as some other girls of the class.

Exercise 60.

Change the Degree of Comparison without changing the meaning:-

1. Abdul is as strong as his brother.

2. Akbar was one of the greatest kings.
3. Some boys are at least as industrious as Karim.
4. Mahabaleshwar is cooler than Mysore.
5. No other bowler in the eleven is so good as Rama.
6. Very few cities in India are as big as Chennai.
7. No other story-book is so popular as The Arabian Nights.
8. This pony is better trained than yours.
9. This Church is the biggest in Mumbai.

10. This newspaper has a bigger circulation than any other morning paper.
11. Helen of Troy was more beautiful than any other woman.
12. The airplane flies faster than birds.
13. Hyderabad is one of the biggest of Indian cities.
14. Some beans are at least as nutritious as meat.
15. Samudra Gupta was one of the greatest of Indian kings.
16. Australia is the largest island in the world.
17. Very few Indo-Anglian novelists are as great as R.K. Narayan.
18. This is one of the hottest districts in India.
19. It is better to starve than beg.
20. He loves all his sons equally well.

3. Interchange of Active and Passive Voice

74. A sentence in the Active form can be changed into the Passive form, and vice versa :-
Active. Brutus stabbed Caesar.

Passive. -- Caesar was stabbed by Brutus.

Active. -- The people will make him President.

Passive. -- He will be made President by the people.

Active. -- Who taught you grammar?

Passive. -- By whom were you taught grammar?/Who were you taught grammar by? --
By whom was grammar taught to you ?

Active. -- The Governor gave him a reward.

Passive. -- He was given a reward by the Governor.

A reward was given him by the Governor.

Active. -- The Romans expected to conquer Carthage.

Passive. -- It was expected by the Romans that they would conquer Carthage.

Active. -- One should keep one's, promises.

Passive. -- Promises should be kept.

Active. -- I know her.

Passive. -- She is known to me.

Active. -- My captors were taking me to prison.

Passive. -- I was being taken to prison by my captors.

Active. -- His behaviour vexes me sometimes.

Passive. -- I am sometimes vexed at his behaviour.

Active. -- It is time to shut up the shop.

Passive. -- It is time for the shop to be shut up.

Active. -- The audience loudly cheered the Mayor's speech.

Passive. -- The Mayor's speech was loudly cheered.

Note:- Whenever it is evident who the agent (i.e., doer of the action) is, it is unnecessary to mention him in the passive form, and this omission gives a neater turn to the sentence. Thus in the last example the agent is not mentioned in the passive form because only those who heard the speech could have cheered it.

Passive. -- My pocket has been picked.

Active. -- Someone has picked my pocket.

Passive. -- Our army has been defeated.

Active. -- The enemy has defeated our army.

Passive. -- I shall be obliged to go.

Active. -- Circumstances will oblige me to go.

Note:- The Active Voice is used when the agent, or actor, is to be

made prominent; the Passive, when the thing acted upon is to be made prominent. Hence the Passive Voice may be used when the agent is unknown, or when we do not care to name the agent ; as, "The ship was wrecked."

Exercise 61.

Change the following sentences into the Passive form. (Omit the agent where possible.)

1. Premchand wrote this novel.
2. We admire the brave.
3. I bought the baby a doll.
4. They know me.
5. He invited me to his house yesterday.
6. They enjoy bathing.
7. I opened the door.
8. I read the book long ago.
9. Pakistan expected to win the match.
10. The master appointed him monitor.
11. Who taught you such tricks as these?
12. Brutus accused Caesar of ambition.
13. The boy is climbing the cliff.
14. He taught me to read Persian.
15. One expects better behaviour from a college student.
16. They showed a video of 'The Titanic'.
17. You must endure what you cannot cure.
18. The King reviewed the troops in the maidan.
19. The curator of the museum showed us some ancient coins.
20. They have pulled down the old house.
21. The rules forbid passengers to cross the railway line.
22. He made his wife do the work.
23. Nature teaches beasts to know their friends.
24. All desire wealth and some acquire it.
25. Lincoln emancipated four million African slaves.
26. We expect good news.
27. They propose to build a dam for irrigation purposes.
28. I offered him a chair.
29. The French surrendered Quebec to the English in 1759.
30. He showed me the greatest respect.
31. Alas ! we shall hear his voice no more.
32. Shall I ever forget those happy days ?
33. Do you not understand my meaning ?
34. We must listen to his words.

Exercise 62.

Rewrite the following sentences in the Passive form. (Omit the agent where possible.)

1. Macbeth hoped to succeed Duncan.

2. Who taught you Urdu?
3. They found him guilty of murder.
4. The King immediately gave orders that he should be imprisoned.
5. Somebody has put out the light.
6. They laughed at his warnings and objected to all his proposals.
7. The Swiss regarded him as an impostor and called him a villain.
8. I have kept the money in the safe.
9. He pretended to be a baron.
10. His subordinates accused him of various offences.
11. I saw him opening the box.
12. He ordered the police to pursue the thief.
13. One cannot gather grapes from thistles.
14. You never hear of a happy millionaire.
15. The public will learn with astonishment that war is imminent.
16. Did you never hear that name?
17. The legend tells us how the castle received its name.
18. Do not insult the weak.
19. Why did he defraud you of your earnings.

Exercise 63.

Change the following sentences into the Active form:-

1. The letter was written by the clerk.
2. Without effort nothing can be gamed.
3. "Shakuntala" was written by Kalidas.
4. I was struck by his singular appearance.
5. He was seen by my brother.
6. He was chosen leader.
7. Honey is made by bees.
8. The bird was killed by a cruel boy.
9. The steam-engine was invented by Watt.
10. The mouse was kilted by the cat.
11. The boy was praised by the teacher.
12. The Exhibition was opened by the Prime Minister.
13. By whom was this jug broken?
14. I was offered a chair.
15. We shall be blamed by everyone.
16. He will be gladdened by the sight.
17. The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.
18. My watch has been stolen.
19. A king may be looked at by a cat.
20. The telegraph wires have been cut.
21. Harsh sentences were pronounced on the offenders.
22. This question will be discussed at the meeting tomorrow.
23. Why should I be suspected by you?
24. Stones should not be thrown by those who live in glass houses.
25. He will be greatly surprised if he is chosen.
26. The ship was set on fire and abandoned by the crew.
27. He was arrested on a charge of theft, but for lack of evidence he was released.

4. Interchange of Affirmative and Negative Sentences

75. Study the following examples.

1. Brutus loved Caesar.

Brutus was not without love for Caesar.

2. I was doubtful whether it was you.

I was not sure that it was you.

3. Old fools surpass all other fools in folly.

There's no fool like an old fool.

4. He is greater than me.

I am not so great as him.

5. Alfred was the best king that ever reigned in England.
No other king as good as Alfred ever reigned in England.

Exercise 64.

Express the meaning of the following sentences in negative form:-

1. He was more rapacious than a griffin.
2. He was as rapacious as a griffin.
3. Akbar was the greatest of the Great Moghuls.
4. He was greater than Aurangzeb.
5. The rose by any other name would smell as sweet.
6. As soon as he came, he made objections.
7. These fishing nets are all the wealth I own.
8. I always love my country.
9. Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
10. He is sometimes foolish.
11. He failed to notice me when he came in.
12. Everybody will admit that he did his best.
13. Only a millionaire can afford such extravagance.
14. Every man makes mistakes sometimes.
15. I care very little what he says about me.
16. As soon as he saw me he came up and spoke to me.
17. He must have seen the Tajmahal when he went to Agra.

Exercise 65.

Convert the following Negatives into Affirmatives:-

1. Nobody was absent.
2. He did not live many years in India.
3. No one could deny that she was pretty.
4. God will not forget the cry of the humble.
5. I am not a little tired'.
6. There was no one present who did not cheer.
7. I never in my life laid a plan and failed to carry it out.
8. Not many men would be cruel and unjust to a cripple.
9. No man could have done better.
10. The two brothers are not unlike each other.
11. He has promised never to touch wine again.
12. We did not find the road very bad.
13. There is no smoke without fire.
14. It is not likely that he will ever see his home again.

5. Interchange of Interrogative and Assertive Sentences

76. Study the following examples;-

1. What though we happen to be late?
It does not matter much though we happen to be late.
2. Why waste time in reading trash?
It is extremely foolish to waste time in reading trash.
3. Were we sent into the world simply to make money?
We were not sent into the world simply to make money.
4. How can man die better than facing fearful odds?
Man cannot die better than facing fearful odds.
5. When can their glory fade?
Their glory can never fade.
6. Was he not a villain to do such a deed?
He was a villain to do such a deed.

Exercise 66.

Transform the following sentences Into Assertive sentence:-

1. Who can touch pitch without being defiled?
2. Can any man by taking thought add a cubit to his stature?
3. What though the field be lost?
4. Is that the way a gentleman should behave?

5. Who does not know the owl?
6. Shall I ever forget those happy days?
7. Who is so wicked as to amuse himself with the infirmities of extreme old age?
8. Why waste time in this fruitless occupation?
9. Is this the kind of dress to wear in school?
10. Can you gather grapes from thorns or figs from thistles?

Exercise 67.

Express the meaning of the following Assertions Questions:-

1. No one can be expected to submit for ever to injustice.
2. There is nothing better than a busy life.
3. Nowhere in the world will you find a fairer building than the Taj Mahal.
4. It is useless to offer bread to a man who is dying of thirst.
5. We could have done nothing without your help.
6. That was not an example to be followed.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

6. Interchange of Exclamatory and Assertive Sentences

77. Study the following examples:-

1. How sweet the moonlight sleeps upon this bank!
The moonlight very sweetly sleeps upon this bank.

2. If only I were young again!
I wish I were young again.

3. Alas that youth should pass away!
It is sad to think that youth should pass away.

4. How beautiful is night!
Night is very beautiful.

5. To think of our meeting here!
[Or] That we should meet here !
It is strange that we should meet here.

Exercise 68.

Transform the following Exclamatory sentences into Assertions:-

1. What would I not give to see you happy!
2. Ah, what a sight was there!
3. What a piece of work is man!
4. What might be done, if men were wise!
5. What a wonderful creature an elephant is!
6. How awkwardly he manages his sword!
7. O that we two were infants playing.
8. If only I had the wings of a dove!
9. What a large nose!
10. If only I had a good horse!
11. If only I were safe at home!
12. O what a fall was there my countrymen!
13. What a delicious meal!
14. What sweet delight a quiet life affords!
15. How well fitted the camel is for the work he has to do!
16. How cold you are!
17. What a beautiful scene this is!
18. What a delicious flavour these mangoes have!
19. Shame on you to use a poor cripple so!
20. If only I knew more people!
21. How you have grown!
22. If only I had come one hour earlier!

Exercise 69.

Transform the following into Exclamatory sentences:-

1. It is a horrible night.
2. It was extremely base of him to desert you in your time of need.
3. It is hard to believe that he did such a deed.
4. I wish I had met you ten years ago.
5. It is very stupid of me to forget your name.
6. He leads a most unhappy life.
7. Interchange of one Part of Speech for another

78. Study the following examples:-

1. That kind of joke does not amuse me.
That kind of joke does not give me any amusement.
2. It costs twelve rupees.
The cost is twelve rupees.

3. He has disgraced his family.
He is a disgrace to his family.

4. He fought bravely.
He put up a brave fight.

5. The treaty of Salbai should be remembered as one of the landmarks in the history of India.
The treaty of Salbai is worthy of remembrance as one of the landmarks in the history of India.

6. I cannot consent to your going.
I cannot give my consent to your going.

7. He gave a curt reply.
He replied curtly.

8. He showed generosity even to his enemies.
He was generous even to his enemies.

9. There is a slight difference between the two shades.
The two shades are slightly different.

10. The Act made the negro slaves free.
The Act gave freedom to the negro slaves.

11. I see him every day.
I see him daily.

12. He examined the document carefully.
He examined the document with care.

13. We passed an anxious hour.
We passed an hour anxiously.

14. Few historians have written in a more interesting manner than Gibbon.
Few historians have written more interestingly than Gibbon.

15. He presumptuously ignored my advice.
He presumed to ignore my advice.

Exercise 70.

(a) In the following sentences replace the Nouns in italics by Verbs :-

1. He rejected all our proposals.

2. Steel gains strength from the addition of nickel.
3. He made an agreement to supply me with firewood.
4. His purpose is not clear from his letter.
5. You cannot gain admission without a ticket.
6. He has no intention of leaving the city.
7. I have a disinclination for work to-day.
8. He made a success of all his undertakings.
9. These mangoes have a sweet smell but a sour taste.

(b) Rewrite the following sentences so as to replace the Adverbs in italics by Verbs:-

1. The defenders *successfully* repelled every attack on the city.
2. This scene is *surpassingly* beautiful.
3. He is *admittedly* the greatest general of the country.
4. They welcomed the good news *most joyfully*.

(c) Rewrite the following sentences so as to replace the Verbs and Adjectives in italics by corresponding Nouns:-

1. Though the ant is small it is *as intelligent as* the elephant.
2. He said he *regretted* that he had acted so *hastily*.
3. He was so *active* in his old age that everybody *admired* him.
4. Before I pay you what is due you must sign this receipt-
5. The best way to *healthyis* to be *temperatre* in all things.

(d) Rewrite the following sentences, replacing Nouns and Adverbs in italics by Adjectives of similar meaning:-

1. In all probability the day will be fine.
2. The rats gave us a great deal of trouble.
3. He was dismissed for negligence rather than incompetence.
4. He was admittedly clever, but he evidently lacked industry.
5. The merchant had great success in all his dealings, and was naturally esteemed by his fellow citizens.

(e) Rewrite the following sentences replacing Nouns and Adjectives in italics by Adverbs of similar meaning:-

1. Her dress was poor and mean.
2. He broke the rules without any intention of doing so, but it does not follow that his punishment was wrong.
3. His mistake was evident, but his sincerity was also obvious.
4. By a careful analysis of these substances you will see that they differ in essence.

CHAPTER 11

TRANSFORMATION OF SENTENCES (Contd.)

1. Conversion of Simple sentences to Compound (Double) sentences

79. A Simple sentence can be converted into a Compound one by enlarging a word or a phrase into a Co-ordinate clause.

Simple. -- He must work very hard to make up for the lost time.

Compound. -- He must work very hard and make up for the lost time.

Simple. -- To his eternal disgrace, he betrayed his country.

Compound. -- He betrayed his country, and this was to his eternal disgrace.

Simple. -- Besides robbing the poor child, he also murdered her.

Compound. -- He not only robbed the poor child but also murdered her.

Simple. -- He must work very hard to win the first prize.

Compound. -- He must work very hard, or he will not win the first prize.

Simple. -- He must not attempt to escape, on pain of death.

Compound. -- He must not attempt to escape, or he will be put to death.

Simple. -- Notwithstanding his hard work, he did not succeed.

Compound. -- He worked hard, yet did not succeed.

Simple. -- Owing to ill-luck, he met with a bad accident on the eve of his examination.

Compound. -- He was unlucky and therefore met with a bad accident on the eve of his examination.

Simple. -- The teacher punished the boy for disobedience.

Compound. -- The boy was disobedient, and so the teacher punished him.

Exercise 71.

Rewrite the following Simple sentences as Compound (Double) ones:-

1. In this tower sat the poet gazing on the sea.
2. To everyone's surprise, the project completely failed.
3. Seeing the rain coming on, we took shelter under a tree.
4. Besides educating his nephew, he also set him up in business.
5. The fog being very dense, the steamer sailed at less than half

6. Raleigh, taking off his cloak politely, placed it in the muddy street.
7. Being occupied with important matters, he had no leisure to see us.
8. In spite of his popularity he cannot be called a great writer.
9. Rushing against Horatius, he smote with all his might.
10. With all his learning, he was far from being a pedant.
11. Little Jack Horner sat in a corner, eating his Christmas pie.
12. He must resign on pain of public dismissal.
13. Owing to drought the crop is short.
14. The men had not completed their work by sunset.
15. Notwithstanding several efforts, he failed.
16. By his pleasant manners he gained many friends.
17. In addition to pecuniary assistance he gave them much valuable advice.
18. The referee having whistled, the game was stopped.
19. On account of his negligence the company suffered heavy losses.
20. Running at top speed, he got out of breath.
21. Possessing all the advantages of education and wealth, he never made name.
22. Taking pity on the mouse, the magician turned it into a cat.
23. Being dissatisfied, he resigned his position.
24. Throwing off his coat, he plunged into sea.

Exercise 72.

Convert the following Simple sentences to Compound sentences:-

1. Hearing their father's footsteps, the boys ran away.
2. With a great effort he lifted the box.
3. The man, being very hungry, ate too much.
4. In spite of his great strength he was overcome.
5. Against the wishes of his family he left school.
6. He was universally respected on account of his virtue.
7. His friend having helped him, he is prospering.
8. Being a cripple, he cannot ride a horse.
9. The rain having washed away the embankment, the train was wrecked.
10. Finding himself in difficulty, he went to his teacher for help.
11. My friend being now in Mumbai, I shall go there to meet him.
12. In the event of such a thing happening, I should take long leave.
13. They are forbidden to enter the sacred place on pain of death.
14. To make certain of getting a place you must apply early.
15. He intends to try again notwithstanding his repeated failures.
16. In spite of all my advice he has done this foolish thing.
17. By reason of his great ability he has been able to win a high position.
18. Through no fault of his own he has become very poor.
19. Knowing no better, he used very inaccurate language.
20. His swords having broken, he was left defenceless.
21. He was rejected owing to ill-health.

22. I do not like him on account of his pride and boastfulness.
23. To avoid punishment he ran away.
24. In his ignorance he followed the wrong course.
25. Having made no provision for old age, he is very poor.
26. Out of a desire for revenge he agreed to this.
27. To add to their troubles, a tyre burst on the way.

2. Conversion of Compound (Double) sentences to Simple sentences

80. The following examples illustrate the chief ways of converting Compound Sentences to Simple Sentences.

Compound. -- He finished his exercise and put away his books.

Simple. -- Having finished his exercise, he put away his books.

Compound. -- Not only did his father give him money, but his mother too.

Simple. -- Besides his father giving him money, his mother also did the same.

Compound. -- He was a mere boy but he offered to fight the giant.

Simple. -- In spite of his being a mere boy, he offered to fight the giant.

Compound. -- He must not be late, or he will be punished.

Simple. -- In the event of his being late, he will be punished.

Compound. -- You must either pay the bill at once or return the goods.

Simple. -- Failing prompt payment, the goods must be returned by you.

Compound. The men endured all the horrors of the campaign and not one of them complained at all.

Simple. The men endured all the horrors of the campaign without one of them making any complaint.

Compound. -- We must eat, or we cannot live.

Simple. -- We must eat to live.

Exercise 73.

Rewrite the following Compound (Double) sentences as Simple ones:-

1. They were poor, and often suffered great hardship.
2. He overslept himself, and so he missed the train.
3. The prince slew his brother and became king in his place.
4. This coat cannot be mine, for it is too big.
5. This general fought bravely, the king therefore made him commander-in-chief.
6. The camel pushed his head into the tent and asked to be allowed to warm his nose.
7. As a boy he had never been at school, and therefore he had no opportunity of learning to read or write.
8. This must not occur again, or you will be dismissed.
9. He granted the request, for he was unwilling to disappoint his friend.
10. They took every precaution ; still they ran aground.
11. He is rich, yet he is not contented.
12. Make haste, or else you will be late.
13. The steamer went down, yet the crew were saved.
14. The piper advanced, and the children followed.
15. The horse reared and the rider was thrown.
16. Walk quickly, else you will not overtake him.
17. I called him, but he gave me no answer.
18. Either he is drowned or some passing ship has saved him.
19. He must have done his duty, for he is a conscientious man.
20. He tried hard, but he did not succeed.
21. He tried again and again, but he did not succeed.
22. We decided not to go any further that day and put up at the nearest hotel.
23. Either you must help me or I must try to carry out my task alone.
24. His partner died, and this added to his difficulties.

25. He was horrified for he saw blood stains on the floor and no sign of his child.
26. Not only men, but women and children were put to death.
27. Everybody else went down to meet the train, but I did not.
28. He is a well-read man, but in matters of business he is a fool.
29. Work at least six hours a day, or you cannot make sure of success.
30. He is very poor, but he does not complain.
31. He neither returned the goods nor paid the bill.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

Exercise 74.

Convert the following Compound (Double) sentences to Simple sentences:-

1. My friend arrived and we went for a walk.
2. The servant brought the lamp and I began my homework.
3. The ink had dried up and I could not write.
4. I have a lot of work and must do it now.
5. We must hurry and we shall escape the rain.
6. He has an unpleasant duty and must perform it.
7. He not only pitied him but relieved him.
8. He did this and so offended his master.
9. He had read the book carefully and could tell the story in his own words.
10. His object became known and everybody tried to help him.
11. He found a rupee, and was delighted at his good luck.
12. Rama has hurt his ankle and will not be able to play to-day.
13. Be good and you will be happy.
14. He did not like the work and he began it unwillingly.
15. I ordered him to halt, but he took no notice.
16. He is a good steady worker, only he is rather slow.
17. I continually invited him to visit me, but he never came.
18. He served out his sentence in goal and was released.
19. He worked exceedingly hard at school, for he was a good obedient boy.
20. The dacoits stopped to divide the booty and the police overtook them.
21. He practised daily and so became an expert player.
22. Your attempt can hardly be called successful: for it has had no good results.
23. The President came into the hall and everyone rose from his seat.
24. He escaped several times but was finally caught.
25. The horse fell heavily and his rider came down with him.
26. He found himself getting weaker and weaker; so he consulted a doctor.
27. The plague broke out in the city and the people moved out into the jungle.
28. I had no money with me, and I could not give (he beggar anything.

3. Conversion of Simple sentences to Complex

81. A Simple sentence can be converted to a Complex sentence by expanding a word or phrase into a Subordinate clause.

This clause may be a Noun, Adjective or Adverb clause.

Simple. -- He confessed his crime.

Complex. -- He confessed that he was guilty.

Simple. -- His silence proves his guilt.

Complex. -- The fact that he is silent proves his guilt.

Simple. -- He bought his uncle's library.

Complex. -- He bought the library which belonged to his uncle.

Simple. -- On the arrival of the mails the steamer will leave.

Complex. -- The steamer will leave as soon as the mails arrive.

Simple. -- He owed his success to his father.

Complex. -- It was owing to his father that he succeeded.

Simple. -- He worked hard to pass the examination.

Complex. -- He worked hard so that he might pass the examination.

Simple. -- Cain, being jealous of Abel, struck him.

Complex. -- Cain struck Able because he was jealous of him.

Simple. -- Only Indians are admitted.

Complex. -- If you are not an Indian you cannot be admitted.

Simple. -- He succeeded unexpectedly.

Complex. -- He succeeded although his success was not expected.

Simple. -- The management is thoroughly bad.

Complex. -- The management is as bad as it could be.

Simple. -- A man's modesty is in inverse proportion to his ignorance.

Complex. -- The more ignorant a man is, the less modest he is.

Exercise 75.

Convert the following Simple sentences to Complex sentences, each containing a Noun clause:-

1. I expect to meet Rama to-night.
2. He hoped to win the prize.
3. His father is not likely to punish him.
4. He admitted stealing the watch.
5. Krishna wishes me to play for his team.
6. He believes their success to be certain in that case.
7. I overheard all his remarks.
8. I did not think fit to reply to his writings.
9. He confessed his fault.
10. His hiding-place is still unknown.
11. I shall be glad of your advice in this matter.
12. He pleaded ignorance of the law.
13. Our friends will hear of our success.
14. You imply my guilt by your words and manner.
15. I request your help.
16. I cannot foretell the time of my departure.
17. I wish you to be quiet.
18. He is said to be a millionaire.
19. Tell the truth.
20. I have long suspected his poverty.

Exercise 76.

Convert the following Simple sentences to Complex sentences, each containing an Adjective clause:-

1. I saw a wounded bird.
2. Rama is happy in his present class.
3. The man near me is my brother.
4. Our guru is a man of blameless life.
5. Your father is the man to help you in this matter.
6. The value of exercise is great.
7. Was this the deed of a good man?
8. I was the first to hear the news.
9. These are not the methods of business.
10. The class-room is not the place for boys to play in.
11. He is hardly the boy to do credit to the school.

12. He liked his former place.
13. Smoke, the certain indicator of fire, appeared in the mine.
14. I was the first to arrive.
15. That is not the way to answer.
16. It was the work of a wild animal.
17. He is the water-carrier.
18. I have nowhere to sit.
19. My friend, the magistrate of this place, is on leave.
20. He sat outside on a stone in the compound.

Exercise 77.

Convert the following Simple sentences to Complex sentences, each containing an Adverb clause:-

1. On being punished, he wept.
2. During Queen Victoria's reign there were many wars.
3. Being quite contented, he never grumbled.
4. Being ill-treated by his master, he ran away.
5. He was too dull to understand.
6. The tiger is feared for its fierceness.
7. With your permission I will go away.
8. The peon would be quite happy with a rise of Rs. 10 a month.
9. He replied to the best of his ability.
10. I can only tell you according to my memory.
11. Of Krishna and Rama the latter works the harder.
12. Owing to ill-health he has resigned.
13. He was annoyed at being rebuked.

14. He cannot be caught on account of his quickness.
15. He is too lazy to succeed.
16. He came in very quietly to avoid waking his father.
17. He waited there with a view to meeting me.
18. There is no admission without permission.
19. I will help you in any possible way.
20. Do not go out without leave.
21. In spite of the heat they marched quickly.
22. For all his youth he is very capable.
23. Till my arrival, wait here.
24. After the death of his father he left Mumbai.
25. Up to his thirtieth year he remained unmarried.
26. From the time of that illness he has been partly blind.
27. Previous to his death he made his will.
28. In anticipation of sanction I have issued the order.
29. He hindered the police in the execution of their duty.
30. This was done in my absence.
31. For fear of imprisonment they kept silence.
32. Notwithstanding my entreaties he shot the dog.
33. He wrote according to instructions.
34. He worked to the best of his ability.
35. Come back at six o'clock.
36. With every blow the body quivered.
37. Speaking honestly, I do not know.
38. I came to-day to take advantage of the special train.
39. He failed to my great surprise.
40. Till the day of the examination he did no more work.
41. The tiger having fallen, he climbed down from the tree.
42. In the time of Aurangzeb taxes were very heavy.
43. We eat to live.
44. Some people live to eat.
45. He has gone down to the river to bathe.
46. Have you come to see me?
47. Does he wish me to go?

Exercise 78.

Rewrite the following Simple sentences as Complex sentences:-

1. Can you tell me the time of his arrival?
2. After seeing the King he departed.
3. Many ships were so shattered as to be wholly unmanageable.
4. England expects every man to do his duty.
5. The guests having departed, he went to bed.
6. Few know the date of Lucy's death.
7. The source of the Nile was difficult to discover.

8. I will meet you at any place convenient for you.
9. In spite of his earnest protestations, he was condemned.
10. He is proud of his high birth.
11. The prince was to be found in the hottest of the battle.
12. I rejoice at his good fortune. .
13. But for his own confession, the crime could scarcely have been brought home to him.
14. He alone entered, the rest of us waiting outside.
15. Not feeling well, he decided to lie down.
16. The last of these voyages not proving very fortunate, I grew weary of the sea.
17. Considering the difficulties of his position, he has acted admirably.
18. Speak low, to prevent our being overheard.
19. He was too much excited to hear reason.

20. A letter from the butler brings to the club the news of Sir Roger's death.
21. My right there is none to dispute,
22. Accustomed to rule, he schooled himself to obey.
23. He saved the child at the risk of his life.
24. A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit.
25. I convinced him of his mistake.
26. It all depends upon the manner of your doing it.
27. He can prove his innocence.
28. Everybody knows the author of Gulliver's Travels.
29. The date of his arrival is uncertain.
30. The duration of the war is uncertain.
31. There is no hope of his recovery.
32. The exact date of the birth of Buddha is unknown.
33. A daily bath is necessary to perfect health.
34. Success or failure depends largely on your own efforts.
35. In my hurry I forgot the most important letters.
36. Listeners never hear any good of themselves.
37. Finding the door unlocked, the thief entered the house.
38. It is impossible to trust the word of a habitual liar.
39. Gray, the author of the Elegy, lived in the eighteenth century.
40. The shepherd found the lost sheep.
41. The boy readily admitted his mistake.
42. Tell me your plans.
43. He could clearly remember the incidents of his youth.
44. On arriving at the foot of the hill, he blew his trumpet.
45. A spider saved Robert Bruce.
46. The prudent man looks to the future.
47. For want of money, he was unable to prosecute his studies.
48. All the money having been spent, we started looking for work.
49. The idle cannot hope to succeed.
50. Our orders were to show no mercy.
51. It was too late for retreat.
52. I must be cruel, only to be kind.
53. The men fought with desperation.
54. He is too truthful to be a successful courtier.
55. Your remuneration depends on the quality of your work.
56. He conducted himself madly to escape suspicion.
57. Good boys need not fear punishment.
58. The accused confessed his guilt.
59. I asked him the reason of his coming.
60. But for your folly you could have been a partner in the firm to-day.
61. Tell me your age.
62. I was glad to hear of your arrival.
63. Being a very diligent and clever lad, he soon distinguished himself.

64. He is too short for a soldier.
65. This is said to be the birthplace of "Buddha.
66. His success went beyond his expectations.
67. In spite of his poor health, he worked hard.
68. Feeling out of sorts, he went to bed.
69. He complained of being unjustly treated.
70. He killed the hen to get the treasure.
71. An army of ants will attack large and ferocious animals.
72. A very miserly planter formerly lived in the island of Jamaica.
73. He often gave his poor slaves too little food.
74. Industry will keep you from want.
75. A drowning man will catch at a straw.

76. It is excellent to have a giant's strength.
77. Having finished our work, we went out for a walk.
78. With all thy faults I love thee still.
79. The news is too good to be true.
80. This tree is too high for me to climb.
81. He is too old to learn anything new.
82. The world's greatest men have not laboured with a view to becoming rich.
83. With a change of wind we shall have rain.
84. With all his wealth he is not happy.

4. Conversion of Complex sentences to Simple sentences

82. Study the following examples:-

Noun Clause

Complex. -- He said that he was innocent.

Simple. -- He declared his innocence.

Complex. -- That you are drunk aggravates your offence.

Simple. -- Your drunkenness aggravates your offence.

Complex. -- Tell me where you live

Simple. -- Tell me your address.

Complex. - It is a pity that we should have to undergo this disgrace.

Simple. -- Our having to undergo this disgrace is a pity.

Complex. -- It is proclaimed that all men found with arms will be shot.

Simple. -- According to the proclamation all men found with arms will be shot

Complex. -- He remarked how impudent the boy was.

Simple. -- He remarked on the boy's impudence,

Complex. -- How long I shall stay is doubtful.

Simple. -- The duration of my stay is doubtful.

Complex. -- Except that he hurt his hand, he was lucky.

Simple. -- Except for the hurt to his hand, he was lucky.

Exercise 79.

Convert each of the following Complex sentence to a Simple sentence:-

1. We believe that he is innocent.
2. It was much regretted that he was absent.
3. The consequence of his carelessness was that the game was lost.
4. He asked why I came.
5. He ordered that the traitor should be executed.
6. It is to be hoped that he escaped unhurt.
7. I do not know when I shall return.
8. We hope that better times will come.
9. The news that the enemy landed spread like wild fire.
10. That I was successful does not make me happy.
11. He ordered the police that they should imprison the rioters.

12. That you should be willing to believe this is incredible.
13. Whoever is prudent is, respected.
14. It is reported that our troops have won a victory.
15. All believed that he was guilty of murder.
16. Tell me what you mean by this.

83. Study the following examples:-

Adjective Clause

Complex. -- He died in the village where he was born.

Simple. -- He died in his native village.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

Complex. -- The moment which is lost is lost for ever.

Simple. -- A lost moment is lost for ever.

Complex. -- Men who have risen by their own exertions are always respected.

Simple. -- Self-made men are always respected.

Complex. -- They that are whole have no need of the physician.

Simple. -- Healthy persons have no need of the physician.

Complex. -- We came upon a hut where a peasant lived.

Simple. -- We came upon a peasant's hut.

Complex. -- Youth is the time when the seeds of character are sown.

Simple. -- Youth is the time for the formation of character.

Complex. -- The exact time when this occurred has not been ascertained.

Simple. -- The exact time of the occurrence has not been ascertained.

Complex. -- The son who was his chief pride in his old age is dead.

Simple. -- His son, the pride of his old age, is dead.

Complex. -- The place where Buddha was cremated has recently been discovered.

Simple. -- The place of Buddha's cremation has recently been discovered.

Complex. -- I have no advice that I can offer you.

Simple. -- I have no advice to offer you.

Exercise 80.

Convert each of the following Complex sentences to a Simple sentence:-

1. He sold the horse which belonged to his brother.
2. As I was unable to help in any other way, I gave her some money.
3. I have no horse that I can lend you.
4. The marks that were left by the whip were still visible.
5. This is the place where we camp.
6. The heart that is full of grief is heavy.
7. The reply which you have made is foolish.
8. The evil that men do lives after them.
9. Do you not remember him who was formerly your friend?
10. This is the needle with which she knits.
11. Have you nothing that you wish to say?
12. He prospered by the help he got from his friends.
13. They were advised by a clever lawyer who was a High Court pleader.
14. He is weak from the illness which he had recently.
15. A man who is dead needs no riches.
16. I have seen the house which belongs to Rama.
17. He was the most learned of the judges who lived at that time.
18. He died in the village where he was born.
19. The horse which is an Arab of pure blood, is very swift.
20. The smell which comes from this drain, is very bad.
21. Can he get no work that he can do?
22. Is there no place which is kept for bathing here?

23. The birds have no water that they can drink.
24. He shot a tiger which was the scourge of the district.
25. That is the book that belongs to me.
26. I saw a man who was blind.
27. This is the bottle which is used for water.
28. The chief thing that Wycliffe and his friends achieved was the translation of the Bible into English.
29. I found the book which I had lost.
30. The boy who stood first got the prize.
31. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.
32. People who live in glass houses must not throw stones.
33. The services he has rendered to the state cannot be over-estimated.
34. The place where they live is very unhealthy.
35. This idea on which he based his philosophy, is very difficult to comprehend.

36. I have no time that I can waste on idle talk.
37. A person who relies on his own efforts has the best chance to win success.
38. Here is a barrier that cannot be passed.
39. A person who has risen by his own exertions is always respected.
40. A boy who had been notoriously idle was awarded a prize.
41. Such men as you cannot be easily, disheartened.
42. A man who is industrious is sure to succeed.
43. He told us the time when he expected to arrive.

84. Study the following examples:-

Adverb Clause

- Complex. -- The Captain was annoyed that he had not carried out his orders.
Simple. -- The Captain was annoyed at his not having carried out his orders.
Complex. -- You can talk as much as you like.
Simple. -- You can talk to your heart's content.
Complex. -- Everything comes if a man will only work and wait
Simple. -- Everything comes to a diligent and patient man.
Complex. -- I am pushing my business wherever I can find an opening.
Simple. -- I am pushing my business in every possible direction-
Complex. -- He will not pay unless he is compelled.
Simple. -- He will pay only under compulsion.
Complex. -- You have succeeded better than you hoped.
Simple. -- You have succeeded beyond your hopes.
Complex. -- When the cat is away the mice will play.
Simple. -- In the absence of the cat the mice will play.
Complex. -- He does not always speak as he thinks.
Simple. -- He does not always speak his thoughts.
Complex. -- A good boy will always do as he is commanded by his superiors.
Simple. -- A good boy will always carry out (or execute) the commands of his superiors.
Complex. -- I was surprised when I heard him talk so.
Simple. -- I was surprised to hear him talk so.
Complex. -- He was so tired that he could not stand.
Simple. -- He was too tired to stand.
Complex. -- If I make a promise I keep it.
Simple. -- I make a promise only to keep it.
Complex. -- As the war was ended, the soldiers returned.
Simple. -- The war being ended, the soldiers returned.
Complex. -- While there is life there is hope
Simple. -- Life and hope are inseparable.
Complex. -- As you sow, so you will reap.
Simple. -- You will but reap the fruits of your sowing.

Exercise 81.

Convert the following Complex sentences into Simple sentences:-

1. As you are here you may as well see it.
2. He was angry when he heard the result.
3. Does he know the consequences if he refuses?
4. He cannot go unless I consent.
5. You cannot always talk sense if you are always talking.
6. You never come here but you steal something.
7. The boy ran as fast as he could.
8. As it was beginning to rain we waited a while.
9. Although he has failed twice he will try again.
10. He made such good speed that he was in time.

11. Because he was ill he stayed at home.
12. As he felt cold he lit a fire.
13. Since I am unable to get much, I accept little.
14. He will pay you when he hears from me.
15. He was so tired that he could not sleep.
16. They rejoice that they are going.
17. I congratulated him because he had passed.
18. He can afford to be generous because he is rich.
19. As the hour had arrived they started.
20. Since I believed his word I did not ask for proof.
21. The dog jumped up when he saw the cat.
22. The horse is so old that it cannot work.
23. The tiger is renowned through all the countryside because he is so cunning and ferocious.
24. He was very angry when he had to pay again.
25. The longer we wait here, the darker it will become.
26. He is not so tall that he cannot enter the doorway.
27. When they heard the signal they sprang up.
28. As the truth is known, further lying is useless.
29. Wherever you go I shall follow you.
30. No sooner did he see us than he disappeared.
31. As soon as he heard the news he wrote to me.
32. Because you have done this I shall punish you.
33. As he was not there, I spoke to his brother.
34. They went where living was cheaper.
35. Wherever he preached the people gathered to listen.
36. She stood as though turned to stone.
37. We have come so that we may help you.
38. You will pass if you work hard.
39. He cannot see unless he wears glasses.
40. His father still trusted him though he had deceived him.
41. He is not so prudent as he ought to be.
42. It was so dark that you could not see your hand.
43. When the fraud was discovered, he was imprisoned after being tried.
44. He was so indolent that he could not be successful.
45. An honest boy speaks as he thinks.
46. Sit down where you please.
47. The larger the brain, the more vigorous the mind.
48. I shall give you my horse if you give me your silver.
49. We will do the work as well as we can.
50. Robinson Crusoe was puzzled when he discovered the print of a foot on the sand.
51. Though the sky falls, he will not be frightened.
52. Apollo was worshipped as long as the Roman Empire lasted,
53. I will buy it, cost what it may.

54. I am surprised that you should believe such nonsense.
55. Whatever you do, I will support.

Exercise 82.

Turn each of the following Complex sentences into a Simple sentence:-

1. It is terrible that people should die of starvation.
2. I was unable to hear what you were saying.
3. We did not go, as the weather was too stormy.
4. It is doubtful whether he will succeed.

5. He became so ill that he was unable to walk.
6. No one is promoted to a higher class unless he is examined.
7. He ran as fast as he could.
8. He said that he would come to-morrow.
9. Tell me where you live.
10. He confessed that he was guilty.
11. It was so dark that we lost our way.
12. Tell me how old you are.
13. When he will arrive is not yet known.
14. Grant me what I ask.
15. We hope that better times will come.
16. I insist that you should not go.
17. I shall remain where I am.
18. If you turn to the right you will soon reach the temple.
19. He gave a graphic account of how he escaped.
20. We went half-an-hour earlier, so that we might get a good seat.
21. He complained that he had been unjustly treated.
22. It is certain that he will come.
23. The Commissioner gave rewards to such men as deserve them.
24. I asked him why he came.
25. A child who has lost his parents is to be pitied.
26. They left at six o'clock so that he might catch the early train.
27. Suspicion always haunts the mind of a person who is guilty.
28. He went to Ooty so that he might improve his health.
29. A book in which were pictures of animals, was presented to him by his uncle.
30. When Caesar saw Brutus among the assassins, he covered his face with his gown.
31. John Bright once said that the safest place in England was a first-class carriage in an express train.
32. The question is so complicated that it cannot be settled immediately.
33. Had he been absent, the motion would have been carried.
34. The passage is so difficult that I cannot comprehend it.
35. We must do the work as well as we can.
36. Although they fought most valiantly, they were defeated.
37. If he wins the battle he will be crowned.
38. I wish to know the time when he died.
39. Those soldiers who survived have received medals.
40. This is a machine which is used for sewing.
41. He seemed very anxious that we should come.
42. The priests were satisfied when he offered the money.
43. You must be hungry if you have not dined.
44. It is time you went.
45. It is lucky that he came just then.
46. It is certain that he will help you.
47. You must write to me as soon as you reach Mumbai.

48. He gave away some books which belonged to his brother.
49. Can you tell me the name of the person who wrote the book ?
50. It is said that he died by his own hand.
51. While my parents are absent I cannot come.
52. This sum is so hard that I cannot do it.
53. As one man fell another took his place.
54. Work as hard as you can.
55. Drink while you may.
56. Such a man as he is should succeed.
57. The police know this from information which has been received by

5. Conversion of Compound sentences to Complex

85. Study the following examples:-

Compound. -- Search his pockets and you will find the watch.

Complex. -- If you search his pockets, you will find the watch.

Compound. -- Do as I tell you, or you will regret it.

Complex. -- Unless you do as I tell you, you will regret it.

Compound. -- The lion was wounded but not killed.

Complex. -- The lion was not killed although he was wounded.

(=Although the lion was wounded, he was not killed.)

Compound. -- Waste not, want not.

Complex. -- If you do not waste, you will not want.

Compound. -- He saw the danger, but pressed on.

Complex. -- Although he saw the danger, he pressed on.

Compound. -- He saw the danger and paused.

Complex. -- When he saw the danger he paused.

Compound. -- He aimed at winning the prize and worked hard.

Complex. -- He worked hard so that he might win the prize.

Compound. -- He had to sign, or be executed.

Complex. -- If he had not signed, he would have been executed.

Compound. -- He is buried near Rome and myrtles grow round his grave.

Complex. -- He is buried near Rome in a place where myrtles grow.

Compound. -- He wishes to become learned ; therefore he is studying hard.

Complex. -- He is studying hard so that he may become learned.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

Exercise 83.

Transform from Compound into Complex sentences:-

1. Spare the rod and spoil the child.
2. He put on his hat and went outside.
3. At length she woke and looked round.
4. Keep quiet, or you will be punished.
5. The ship was wrecked, but the crew were saved.
6. Either Shirin will come or she will send a letter.
7. Do your best, and you will never regret it.
8. He received your telegram and set off at once.
9. I must hurry back at once, or my business will greatly suffer.
10. Do this, or you will be punished.
11. Rama may not be clever but he is certainly industrious.
12. I put my hand into my pocket and gave him a rupee.
13. Only do the right, and you will have no reason to be ashamed.
14. The crow stole a piece of cheese and flew with it to a tree.
15. I called at your house yesterday but you were out.
17. We must do our work well, or our master will be angry with us.

18. You have earned his gratitude, so you shall not go unrewarded.
19. He failed in his first attempt and never tried again.
20. Time flies fast, yet it sometimes appears to move slowly.
21. Mosquitoes cause malaria, and this is well known,
22. She must weep, or she will die.
23. He ran to the station, but he missed the train.
24. The boy was tired, therefore he went to bed.
25. He is poor, but contented.
26. Life has few enjoyments; still we cling to it.
27. Eat few suppers and you'll need few medicines.
28. He is working hard; therefore he will succeed.

29. He wishes to succeed ; therefore he works hard.
30. He was going along this road, and met a dragon.
31. They were refused pay, but went on working.
32. I frowned upon him, yet he loves me still.
33. Do you find victories and we will find rewards ?
34. The archers were poorly armed, but they offered a stubborn resistance.
35. Cross this line and you will be captured.
36. You must be warmly clad, or you will catch cold.
37. Take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves.
38. He adored his proud wife, but he was in mortal fear of her fierce temper.
39. We are few, but we are of the right sort.
40. Be diligent and you will succeed.
41. It seems too good to be true nevertheless it is a fact.
42. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.
43. I will recover it, or die in the attempt.
44. Take a farthing from a hundred pounds, and it will be a hundred pounds no longer.
45. He has lost all his teeth, consequently he cannot eat hard food.
46. Give him an inch and he'll take an ell.
47. Hear him out, and you will understand him the better.
48. Advance another step, and you are a dead man.
49. Send the deed after me and I will sign it.
50. He was very learned and seemed to know everything.
51. He was ambitious and therefore I killed him.
52. We landed at Karachi, and there we spent a very enjoyable week.
53. We called upon Mr. Pundit and he introduced us to his partner.
54. He was my friend, therefore I loved him.

Exercise 84.

Convert the following Compound sentences to Complex sentences:-

1. Give me the book and I will read it.
2. Take quinine and your fever will be cured.
3. I tell him to be quiet and he takes no notice.
4. He is deaf but he will always pretend to hear.
5. You have paid the bill but you will get no more credit. ,
6. I ran all the way to the station but I missed the train.
7. Rama is a better player than Krishna and therefore he must take his place in the team.
8. You called me and here I am.
9. The master is nearly blind and the boys are very sorry for him.
10. We will win or die.
11. Let me come in, or I will break down the door.
12. Be careful in your diet and you will keep health.
13. Listen and I will tell you all.
14. He is very agreeable but I don't like him.

15. It is cold, so I shall wear a coat.
16. Send me the gun and I will mend it.
17. Be good and you need not be clever.
18. Follow me, or you will lose your way.
19. You ordered the goods and so they have been sent.
20. You must pay, or else sign a chit.
21. I do not like his lectures and so I don't attend them.
22. He ran away, or they would have killed him.
23. He has injured me but I will forgive him.
24. Be quiet, or I shall punish you.
25. Be just and fear not.

26. He was never present, but he always sent a deputy.
27. Be kind and help me.
28. Pay heed to the small details and the general plan will surely succeed.
29. He is certain to be late, so why wait for him ?
30. You or I must go away.
31. Sri Lanka went in first on a very wet wicket, and so they lost the match.
32. They tried to bribe the peon but he was too clever for them.

6. Conversion of Complex Sentences to Compound

86. Study the following examples:-

Complex. -- I am certain you have made a mistake.

Compound. -- You have made a mistake, and of this I am certain.

Complex. -- I am glad that he has recovered from illness.

Compound. -- He has recovered from illness, and I am glad of it.

Complex. -- We can prove that the earth is round.

Compound. -- The earth is round, and we can prove it.

Complex. -- I have found the book that I had lost.

Compound. -- I had lost a book, but I have found it.

Complex. -- As soon as he got the telegram, he left in a taxi.

Compound. -- He got the telegram, and immediately he left in a taxi.

Complex. -- He worked hard so that he might win the prize.

Compound. -- He aimed at winning the prize and worked hard.

Complex. -- If he is at home, I shall see him.

Compound. -- He may be at home, and in that case I shall see him.

Complex. -- He lost more than he could afford.

Compound. -- He could afford to lose something, but he lost somewhat more.

Complex, -- He is more a philosopher than a poet.

Compound. -- He is something of a poet, but rather more of a philosopher.

Complex. -- If you do not hurry you will miss the train.

Compound. -- You must hurry, or you will miss the train.

Complex. -- Unless we do our work well our master will be angry with us.

Compound. -- We must do our work well, or our master will be angry with us.

Complex. -- We sow so that we may reap.

Compound. -- We desire to reap, therefore we sow.

Exercise 85.

Convert from Complex to Compound sentences:-

1. Once upon a time a man owned a hen which laid every day a golden egg.
2. We selected this bicycle after we had tried several times.
3. It is surprising that he did not succeed.
4. If you do not take exercise, you will be ill.
5. If you run, you will be in time.
6. He ran away because he was afraid.
7. As he was not there, I spoke to his brother,

8. Although he saw the danger, he pressed on.
9. Though you try with all your might, you will not succeed.
10. I shall not go unless I am invited.
11. If you eat too much you will be ill.
12. A book's a book, although there's nothing in it.
13. Unless you keep quiet, you will be punished.
14. As Caesar loved me, I weep for him.
15. Because you have done this I shall punish you.
16. As soon as he heard the news he wrote to me.
17. When you have rested, go on with the work.
18. I forgave him because he was dying.
19. He stayed at home because he was feeling ill.
20. His father still trusted him though he had deceived.

21. Though the sky falls, he will not be frightened.
22. He was educated at a public school where he learnt Latin.
23. I struck him because he ventured to obstruct my path.
24. They went to war so that they might extend their empire.
25. Although they fought most valiantly, they were defeated.
26. He writes so illegibly that I cannot read his letter.
27. I know what you told him.
28. The ship was steered so skilfully that it reached the harbour safely.
29. You must be respectable if you would be respected.
30. As he was ambitious, I killed him.
31. Though often capricious and impertinent, she was never out of temper.
32. Though the waves are raging white, I'll row you o'er the ferry.
33. He finished first though he began late.
34. Though he tries hard, he is seldom successful.
35. When the sun set he returned home.
36. Since duty calls us, we must obey.
37. He had a cow that gave enormous quantities of milk.
38. He failed because he was too rash.
39. We eat so that we may live.
40. He was so learned that he seemed to know everything.

Exercise 86.

Convert the following Complex sentences to Compound sentences:-

1. Rama went to school as soon as he had finished his meal.
2. If I ask a civil question I expect a civil reply.
3. They have never been poor since they opened that shop.
4. I could answer if I chose.
5. We might admire a bad man though we cannot admire a weak one.
6. I advise you to try although you may not succeed.
7. I spoke plainly so that you might understand.
8. He feigned sleep as he had an object in doing so.
9. He gave himself up because flight was useless.
10. As we are here we will stay here.
11. I do not think he will come.
12. I know there is a rupee in your hand.
13. Come when you like.
14. I shall come when I am in better health.
15. I would have shot the snake if I had seen it.
16. His precept is as beautiful as his practice is disgraceful.
17. At Rome we must behave as the Romans do.
18. „ He fell as I fired.
19. If you come here you will repent it.
20. I have never heard from him since he left Mumbai.
21. He went to the house so that he might leave a message.

22. Unless we run we shall miss the train.
23. As soon as the sun touches the horizon darkness begins to settle upon the scene.
24. However clever you may be, you cannot succeed without industry.
25. Do this, lest a worse thing befall.
26. If you trust to the book you will find yourself in difficulties.
27. We may lose all without regret, if we may keep our honour sustained.
28. Bad as things are they might be worse.
29. You may go when you have finished your work.
30. His bark is worse than his bite.
31. If I am right you must be wrong.

Exercise 87.

(Miscellaneous) Recast the following sentences as directed:

1. A soldier of the tenth legion leaped into the water as soon as the ship touched the shore. (Begin with No sooner)
2. We have helped them with money as well as a body of workers, all well trained and experienced. (Use the expression 'not only' and 'everyone'.)
3. Mrs. Smith is the wisest member of the family and of her four daughters Jane is the prettiest. (Use the comparatives of 'wise' and 'pretty'.)
4. The difficulty was solved by means of a special service devised for the occasion. (Make the word 'service' the subject.)
5. The lady was compelled by the doctor to drink such vile medicine that she was all but killed by him. (Use the active voice throughout.)
6. You are already as well acquainted with these affairs as I am. (Use 'known' for 'acquainted'.)
7. As soon as Sir Roger had seated himself, he called for wax candles. (Use 'no sooner' for 'as soon as'.)
8. When supper had been prepared, Robinson Crusoe sat down expecting to enjoy himself greatly. (Use noun forms instead of 'prepared' and 'expecting'.)
9. Nelson knew the value of obedience so well that he anticipated some censure for his act. (Rewrite this sentence, using 'too' for 'so'.)
10. The secretary sent me no reply for ten days. (Rewrite, using the verb 'reply' instead of the noun.)
11. Have a look at the newspaper and you will find a lot of space devoted to advertisements. (Begin with if)
12. Her reason for not going with us was that she had no money. (Use there fore.)
13. Besides having a salary, he also has a private income. (Use not only but)
14. His parents were compelled by poverty to send him abroad that he might earn his own living. (Simple sentence, active voice.)
15. His fondness for games increases with his proficiency. (Complex sentence, using “the – the” and adjectives to replace the abstract nouns.) .

16. Of all the men I know none is less inclined than he is to believe ill of others. (Reduce to two clauses.)

17. When the monsoon broke, the temperature fell rapidly. (Simple sentence, “break” as subject; replace “fell” by noun).

18. He has squandered his fortune, estranged his friends and ruined his health by his recklessness and extravagance. (Use “not only – but”.)

19. He has discovered new facts and advanced new arguments, but my opinion is unchanged. (Complex sentence; negative principal clause with verb in active voice; two adjectival clauses.)

20. He is notoriously mean in his treatment of his servants. [Rewrite in four ways:- (1) Simple sentence with “treatment” as subject; (2) Simple sentence with “treat” as the verb; (3) Complex sentence with a noun clause; (4) Complex sentence with an adjective clause and “meanness” as subject of the principal clause].

21. You can imagine my annoyance on learning of the postponement of the football match. (Complex sentence; three subordinate clauses.)

22. His sole income is what he earns by his pen. (Make the principal clause negative.)

23. A sailing ship was wrecked here last December. [Rewrite in three ways so as to emphasize (1) “sailing”, (2) “here”, (3) “December”].

24. It is probable that he will come back. (Simple sentence; replace “probable” and “come back” by nouns.

CHAPTER 12

SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES

Combination of two or more Simple sentences into a single Simple sentence

87. Synthesis is the opposite of Analysis and means the combination of a number of simple sentences into one new sentence-Simple, Compound or Complex.

88. The following are the chief ways of combining two or more Simple sentences into one Simple sentence:-

(i) By using a Participle.

1. He jumped up. He ran away.

Jumping up, he ran away.

2. He was tired of play. He sat down to rest.

Tired (or, being tired) of play, he sat down to rest.

(ii) By using a Noun or a Phrase in Apposition.

1. This is my friend. His name is Rama.

This is my friend Rama.

2. I spent two days in Cox's Bazar. It is one of the most attractive spots in Bangladesh.

I spent two days in Cox's Bazar, one of the most attractive spots in Bangladesh.

3. This town was once a prosperous sea-port. It is now a heap of ruins.

This town, once a prosperous sea-port, is now a heap of ruins.

(iii) By using a Preposition with a Noun or Gerund.

1. The moon rose. Their journey was not ended.

The moon rose before the end of their journey.

2. He has failed many times. He still hopes to succeed.

In spite of many failures he hopes to succeed.

3. Her husband died. She heard the news. She fainted.

On hearing the news of her husband's death, she fainted.

(iv) By using the Nominative Absolute Construction.

1. The soldiers arrived. The mob dispersed.

The soldiers having arrived, the mob dispersed.

2. The town was enclosed by a strong wall. The enemy was unable to capture it.
The town having been enclosed by a strong wall, the enemy was unable to capture it. (v)

(v) By using an Infinitive.

1. I have some duties. I must perform them.
I have some duties to perform.

2. We must finish this exercise. There are still three sentences.
We have still three sentences of this exercise to finish.

3. He wanted to educate his son. He sent him to Europe.
He sent his son to Europe to be educated.

4. He is very fat. He cannot run.
He is too fat to run.

(vi) By using an Adverb or an Adverbial Phrase.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

1. He deserved to succeed. He failed.
He failed undeservedly.

2. The sun set. The boys had not finished the game.
The boys had not finished the game by sunset.

89. Several of these methods may be combined in the same sentence.
The sun rose. The fog dispersed. The general was determined to delay no longer. He gave the order to advance.

At sunrise, the fog having dispersed, the general, determined to delay no longer, gave the order to advance.

Exercise 88.

Combine each set of sentences into one Simple sentence by using Participles:-

1. He hurt his foot. He stopped.
2. The thief had been in prison before. He received severe sentences.
3. He was unwilling to go any further. He returned home.
4. They saw the uselessness of violence. They changed their policy.
5. He was weary of failure. He emigrated to Africa.
6. The King was warned of his danger. He made good his escape.
7. He lost a large sum of money. He gave up speculation.
8. I received no answer. I knocked a second time.
9. His wife encouraged him. He persevered.
10. He gave up his situation. He was not satisfied with his salary.
11. He felt tired. He laid his work aside.
12. He went straight on. He saw Hari on the path.
13. The stable door was open. The horse was stolen.
14. The hunter took up his gun. He went out to shoot the Hon.
15. I went to Mumbai last year. I wished to see a dentist.
16. A crow stole a piece of cheese. She flew to her nest to enjoy the tasty meal.
17. The magician took pity on the mouse. He turned it into a cat.
18. A passenger alighted from the train. He fell over a bag on the platform.
19. My sister was charmed with the silk. She bought ten yards.
20. I did not hear his answer. It was spoken quietly.
21. The steamer was delayed by a storm. She came into port a day late.
22. He had resolved on a certain course. He acted with vigour.
23. The letter was badly written. I had great difficulty in making out its contents.
24. A hungry fox saw some bunches of grapes. They were hanging from a vine.
25. Cinderella hurried away with much haste. She dropped one of her little glass-slippers.
26. I was walking along the street one day, I saw a dead snake.
27. He was overpowered. He surrendered.
28. He ran at top speed. He got out of breath.
29. He possessed all the advantages of education and wealth. He never made a name.

30. He was occupied with important matters. He had no leisure to see visitors,
31. The Russians burnt Moscow. The French were forced to quit it.
32. The votes on each side were equal. The chairman gave his casting vote against the resolution.
33. Wolsey lost the favour of his master. He was dismissed from his high offices.
34. He is a big boy. He is very strong. He is in the foot-ball team:
35. He came to me. He wanted leave. He was ill.
36. I heard Abdul. He was shouting very loudly. He was calling me.
37. He raised his gun. He took aim. He shot the tiger.
38. He could not eat hard food. He was very old. He had lost his teeth.
39. I have told you the facts. I have nothing more to say. I will sit down.
40. I was returning home. I saw a man. He looked very ill. He was lying by the roadside.

Exercise 89.

Combine each set of sentences into one Simple sentence by using Nouns or Phrases in Apposition:-

1. There goes my brother. He is called Sohrab.
2. The cow provides milk. Milk is a valuable food.
3. Mr. Pundit was elected President. He is a well-known Sanskrit scholar.
4. Coal is a very important mineral. It is hard, bright, black and brittle.
5. We saw the picture. It is a very fine piece of work.
6. Geoffrey Chaucer was born in 1340. He is the first great English poet.
7. Tagore's most famous work is the Gitanjali. It is a collection of short poems.
8. His only son died before him. He was a lad of great promise.
9. His uncle was a millionaire. He sent him to England for his education.
10. The dog bit the man. He was a notorious burglar.
11. Bruno is my faithful dog. I love him.
12. Jawaharlal Nehru died in 1964. He was the first Prime Minister of India.
13. De Lesseps made the Suez Canal. This Was a great work. He was a French engineer.
14. Mr. Pundit lives in Dustipore. He is the Collector. It is a large town.

Exercise 90.

Combine each set of sentences into one Simple sentence by using Prepositions with Nouns or Gerunds:-

1. He attended to his duties. He earned promotion.
2. He must confess his fault. He may thus escape punishment.
3. He was ill last term. He was unable to attend school.
4. I forgave him his fault. That has not prevented him from repeating it.
5. The bugle sounded. The weary soldiers leapt to their feet.
6. The word of command will be given. You will then fire.
7. He set traps every night. He cleared his house of rats.
8. The judge gave his decision. The court listened silently.
9. He expects to obtain leave. He has already bought his steamer ticket.
10. He has a good record. It is impossible to suspect such a man.
11. Even a bird will defend its young ones. It then shows great courage.
12. There was a want of provisions. The garrison could hold out no longer.
13. You helped me. Otherwise I should have been drowned.
14. I have examined the statement. I find many errors in it.
15. He is free from disease. At least he appears to be so.
16. His son died. This gave him a shock. He never fully recovered from it.
17. He took the law in his own hands. He was not justified in doing so.
18. It rained hard. The streets were flooded.
19. He made heroic efforts to succeed. He failed.
20. The weather is pleasant. It is a little cold however.
21. He was rude, I took no notice of it.
22. He has stolen the purse. There is no doubt about this.
23. She wants to marry a foreigner. Her father is opposed to this.

24. He entered the room with his hat on. His behaviour surprised me.
25. He got great honour. He saved the life of the Rajah.
26. There was an advertisement in the newspaper. His interest was aroused.
27. He amused us very much. He sang a funny song.
28. The prince was ill. The people heard of it. They crowded to the palace.
29. The prince recovered. The people received the news. They were very enthusiastic.
30. He makes a lot of money. He buys horses. He sells horses.
31. I saw a sowar. He had a lance in his hand. He had a sword by his side.
32. She stood there for hours. She did not move. She did not speak.
33. The discovery of his crime was a heavy blow. His reputation suffered. His business decreased.

Exercise 91.

Combine each set of sentences into one simple sentence by using the Nominative Absolute construction:-

1. His friend arrived. He was very pleased.
2. The rain fell. The crops revived.
3. The storm ceased. The sun came out.
4. The troops were ordered out. The police were unable to hold the mob in check.
5. The holidays are at an end. Boys are returning to school.
6. The wind failed. The crew set to work with a will.
7. It was a very hot day. I could not do my work satisfactorily.
8. His house has been burned down. He lives in an hotel.
9. The king died. His eldest son came to the throne.
10. His father was dead. He had to support his widowed mother.
11. Rain was plentiful this year. Rice is cheap.
12. The secretaryship was vacant. Nobody was willing to undertake duties of the post. I offered my services.
13. The prisoner was questioned. No witness came forward. The Judge dismissed the case.
14. The sun rose. The fog cleared away. The lighthouse was seen less than a mile away.
15. He fired his gun. The ball went high. The tiger sprang on him.
16. The master was out of the room. The door was shut. The boys made a lot of noise.

Exercise 92.

Combine each set of sentences into one Simple sentence by using Infinitives:-

1. He had no money. He could not give any away.
2. I have told you all. There is nothing more to be said.
3. He cannot afford a motor-car. He is too poor.
4. I heard of his good fortune. I was glad of that.
5. The information is of no use to us. It has come too late.
6. Your father will hear of your success. He will be delighted.
7. You did not invest all your savings in one concern. You were prudent.
8. He did not have even a rupee with him. He could not buy a loaf of bread.
9. The Pathan took out a knife, His intention was to frighten the old man.
10. I speak the truth. I am not afraid of it.
11. He wants to earn his livelihood. He works hard for that reason.
12. The strikers held a meeting. They wished to discuss the terms of the employers.
13. He has five children. He must provide for them.
14. Napoleon was one of the greatest of generals. This is universally acknowledged.
15. His Majesty desired to kill Gulliver secretly. Various means were employed for this purpose.
16. I will speak the truth. I am not afraid of the consequences.
17. He is very honourable. He will not break his word.

18. He has some bills. He must pay them.
19. He must apologise. He will not escape punishment otherwise.
20. He keeps some fierce dogs. They will guard his house. They will keep away robbers.

Exercise 93

Combine each set of sentences into one Simple sentence by using Adverbs or Adverbial Phrases:-

1. I accept your statement. I do it without reserve.
2. He answered me. His answer was correct.
3. He forgot his umbrella. That was careless.
4. He is a bad boy. This is certain.
5. The train is very late. That is usual.
6. I shall come back. I shall not be long.
7. He kicked the goal-keeper. It was his intention to do so.

8. He was obstinate. He refused to listen to advice.
9. He spent all his money. This was foolish.
10. He was not at the meeting. His absence was unavoidable.
11. He applied for leave. It was not granted.
12. He admitted his error. He expressed his regret.
13. I met him only once. It was in a railway carriage.
14. He has succeeded. His success has been beyond my expectation.
15. It must be done. The cost does not count.
16. I have read Bacon. It has profited me greatly.
17. He persevered. He was not deterred by obstacles.
18. The door was open. It looked rather suspicious.
19. He is not qualified for the post. He is not qualified in any degree.
20. The blow dazed him. That condition lasted only for a time.
21. I did not eat any of the poisoned food. This was lucky.
22. He solved the problem. Its solution took him no time.
23. He visited Ooty. He did so for reasons of health,
24. He accomplished the task. He brought unflagging industry to his accomplishment.
25. Boys grow up to be men. The growth is very slow. It cannot be seen.
26. Rama struck Krishna. His blows were cruel. They were frequent. There was no reason for this.

Exercise 94.

(Miscellaneous) Combine each set of sentences into one Simple sentence:-

1. Homer was a great poet. He was born somewhere. Nobody knows where.
2. He was a leader. He did not follow other men. Such was his nature.
3. I bought this hat two years ago. It is still good. It is fit to wear.
4. He devoted himself to public affairs. He never took a holiday. This continued for thirty years.
5. Clive made proposals. Some opposed the proposals. The majority supported them. They were carried.
6. Clive was determined to reform the administration. Reforms were needed. He informed the council accordingly.
7. The man was innocent. He could have defended himself. He refused to speak. He was afraid of convicting his friend.
8. He was in prison. His friend was in the next cell. There was a brick wall between the cells. He made a hole in the wall. He was able to talk to his friend.
9. The boy was drowning. He shouted for help. A workman heard the boy's shouts. He plunged into the river. He risked his own life.
10. The traveller was toiling slowly over the desert. He suddenly turned round. He heard his companion's voice. His companion was crying for help.
11. We returned down the valley of the Jamuna. We came first to Delhi. Delhi is the capital of India.
12. The art of printing was introduced into England during the reign of Edward IV.

The art of printing was introduced by William Caxton. William Caxton was a native of Kent.

13. He struck his foot against a stone. He fell to the ground. He made his clothes very dirty.

14. The sun shone on the corn. The corn ripened. It did this in a short time. The farmer was filled with joy.

15. He opened his letters. He read them carefully. He sent for his clerk. He dictated answers to them.

16. He paid all his late father's debts. This was a very honest proceeding. It was very creditable to him.

17. He has two horses. He must feed them. He must water them. He must groom them. He must bring them to his master at 12 o'clock.

18. He goes to school. He wishes to learn. He wants to grow up honest, healthy and clever.

19. There was a man hiding in my garden. He was armed with a gun. He was a Pathan. My notice was drawn to it.
20. The soldiers were starving. Their ammunition was expended. Their clothes were in rags. Their leaders were dead. The enemy easily defeated them.
21. Napoleon was the first Emperor of the French. He was a great soldier. He inspired his armies with the most war-like spirit. This was the cause of their many victories.
22. Wellington was the greatest of English admirals. Napoleon was the greatest of French soldiers. They were contemporaries. They were the heroes of their respective countries.
23. The miser laughed. He found himself richer by a rupee. He saw his adversary outwitted.
24. He hardened his heart. He wished to punish the people mercilessly. He wanted to make an example of them once and for all.
25. He receives much gratitude. He performs kindly actions. He is not harsh in the execution of his duty. He does not oppress the poor.
26. His friends assembled. They offered him their congratulations upon his safe return. Everybody was comfortably seated. He described all his adventures.
27. The thieves poisoned the dog. He had brought it from England/He had trained it carefully to protect his property.
28. Vultures appeared one after another. They were wheeling round and round. They were descending towards the spot. They had cruel beaks and talons.
29. The room was covered with blood. It stained the walls and ceiling. It darkened the floor. It flowed in a stream under the door. It stood in puddles everywhere.
30. The house had been pulled down. Another had been built in its place. It was difficult to identify the exact spot.
31. He earned the hatred of all good men. He incited youths to crime. He furnished them with means. He himself kept safely out of the way in time of danger.
32. He copied from the next boy. This was a mean and dishonest action. It brought disgrace upon him. He was punished for it.
33. He had not sufficient courage. He could not face the opposition of his caste fellows. He could not go away from his native place to begin life afresh.
34. Rabindranath Tagore founded Shantiniketan. He was a Nobel laureate. He was the author of the national anthem.
35. He could not finish his work. He had no opportunity. He could not do much of it in fact. He was very often ill. He was frequently absent.
36. The criminal was a man of his own caste. He was an ungrateful and incorrigible wretch. He had often helped him.
37. He went for a walk one day. He saw a wounded bird. He picked it up. He brought it home. He carefully tended it for some time. It completely recovered. This gave him great joy.
38. I knew a boy at school. He is now famous as a soldier. He is known to the tribesmen as the "Sleepless One". He is greatly feared by them.
39. The water had boiled. The tea was made. The food was ready, The table was spread. They sat down to eat and drink.

40. He deserves my thanks. He found my purse. He returned it to me. He took nothing out of it.

41. I saw a dog. It had three legs. It had only one ear. It was a terrier. It was a well bred little animal.

42. He must clean all the silver. He must put it away. He must lock it up. He must bring me the key of the box. These were my orders to him.

43. The horse had many of the points of a racer. It had slim legs. It had high withers. It had powerful quarters. It had a tremendous stride.

44. He was a great statesman. He had worked well for his country. He was very popular. He was awarded the title of "Bharat Ratna".

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

45. Wood was collected. Camp fires were lighted. Food was cooked. Food was eaten. The army lay down to sleep.
46. He alienated his friends. His conduct was disgraceful. He was put in goal.
47. Rama had a wide knowledge of the business. Krishna had the necessary capital. They combined resources. They entered into partnership.
48. Their father had a large sum of money. He divided it equally between them by his will. The daughters were eagerly sought in marriage.
49. The ground is soft and marshy. There are many frogs. Snakes abound there. They are the enemies of mankind.
50. His hopes are high. His superiors are pleased with him. He is justified in hoping.
51. He rode along for hours. He did not strike his horse. He did not spur it.
52. I have some advice. I must give it to you. I must impress it strongly upon you.
53. I hear rumours about Laxman. He is an old pupil of mine. He is a good cricketer. He is a good football player. He is not a steady worker.
54. He was delighted with the intelligence and brightness of the scholars. He over looked the fact of their knowing few things by heart.
55. He built a house. It had many large doors. It had many large windows. It had wide verandahs. It had a general air of coolness and comfort.
56. He told a story. It was about a man. The man had great strength. He was a famous warrior.
57. He came to Mumbai. He wished to see his father. He had some business to settle.
58. After the storm the boat had no mast. It could not keep before the wind. It could not return to port.
59. The cage contains a tiger. The cage was strongly built. It was so built for this purpose.
60. The ancient myths of India have been preserved in the minds of the people. They have been preserved with great care. This has been done by priests. It has also been done by the learned men. These are the guardians of the lamp of learning.

CHAPTER 13

SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES (Contd.)

Combination of two or more Simple Sentences into a single Compound sentence

90. Simple sentences may be combined to form Compound sentences by the use of Coordinative Conjunctions. These are of four kinds:- Cumulative, Adversative, Alternative, and Illative.

A. 1. Night came on. The room grew dark.
Night came on and the room grew dark.

2. He is a fool. He is a knave.
He is a fool and a knave.
[Or] He is both a fool and a knave.

[Or] He is not only a fool but also a knave.

[Or] He is a fool as well as a knave.

3. The wind blew. The rain fell. The lightning flashed.

The wind blew, the rain fell, and the lightning flashed.

It will be noticed that the conjunction and simply adds one statement to another.

The conjunctions both -- and, not only -- but also, as well as are emphatic forms of and and do the same work.

Conjunctions which merely add one statement to another are Cumulative.

B. 1. He is slow. He is sure.

He is slow but he is sure.

2. I was annoyed. I kept quiet.

I was annoyed, still (or yet) I kept quiet.

3. He failed. He persevered.

He failed, nevertheless he persevered.

4. I shall not oppose your design. I cannot approve of it.

I shall not oppose your design; I cannot, however, approve of it.

5. He was all right. He was fatigued.

He was all right; only he was fatigued.

It will be noticed that the conjunctions but, still, yet, nevertheless, however, express a contrast between one sentence and the other. Some of these conjunctions (still, yet, however, nevertheless) are more emphatic than but.

Conjunctions which express opposition or contrast between two statements are called Adversative.

C. 1. Make haste. You will be late.

Make haste or you will be late.

2. Come in. Go out.

Come in or go out.

[Or more emphatically]. Either come in or go out.

3. Do not be a borrower. Do not be a lender.

Do not be a borrower or a lender.

Or: Be neither a borrower nor a lender.

It will be noticed that the conjunctions or, either -- or, neither -- nor, express a choice between two alternatives.

Conjunctions which express a choice between two alternatives are called Alternative.

D. 1. He was obstinate. He was punished.

He was obstinate; therefore he was punished.

2. I cannot see. It is very dark.

I cannot see, for it is very dark.

3. It is raining heavily. I will take an umbrella with me.

It is raining heavily, so I will take an umbrella with me.

It will be noticed that the conjunctions therefore, for, so, etc., join sentences in which one statement is inferred from the other.

Conjunctions which express an inference are called Illative.

1. Abdul is ill. He cannot study. He still attends school

Abdul is ill and cannot study, yet he still attends school

2. He saw the boy in the street. He stopped to speak to him. He gave him a rupee.

Seeing the boy in the street, he stopped to speak to him and gave him a rupee.

Exercise 95.

Combine each set of Simple sentences into one Compound sentence:-

1. He does well. He is nervous at the start.

2. The way was long. The wind was cold.

3. It is raining heavily. I will take an umbrella with me.

4. The harvest truly is plenteous. The labourers are few.

5. It was a stormy night. We ventured out.

6. Football is a vigorous and healthy game. Every boy should play it.

7. He is foolish. He is also obstinate.

8. I am in the right. You are in the wrong.
9. We can travel by land. We can travel by water.
10. The train was wrecked. No one was hurt.
11. The paper is good. The binding is very bad.
12. We must hasten. The robbers will overtake us.
13. The prince married the beautiful princess. They lived happily ever after.
14. The river is deep and swift. I am afraid to dive into it.
15. He was fined. He was sent to prison.
16. You may go to the theatre. Rama may go to the theatre.
17. Bruce was lying on his bed. He looked up to the roof. He saw a spider.
18. I cried out sadly. I beat my head and breast. I threw myself down on the ground.
19. You may play hockey. You may play football. You must do either of the two.
20. You may be wrong. Rashid may be wrong. You cannot both be right.
21. I got up. I looked about everywhere. I could not perceive my companions.
22. In Hyderabad I visited Charminar, Golkonda Fort and Birla Mandir. I could not visit Salar Jung Museum.
23. A is equal to B. B is equal to C. A is equal to C.
24. Most of the rebels were slain. A few escaped. They hid in the woods and marshes. The rebellion was quickly suppressed.
25. He was my school-fellow. He has become a great man. He has grown proud. He forgets his old friends.
26. I did not see you. I should have spoken to you. I had important news. Delay was dangerous.
27. Make haste. You will be late. There is no other train till midnight. That train is a slow one.
28. Their boats are made of a kind of bark. They are very light. They can easily be carried on the shoulders.
29. The emu, or Australian ostrich, does not sit on its eggs. It covers them up with leaves and grass. It leaves them to be hatched by the heat of the sun.
30. We must catch the 5 o'clock train. There is only half an hour left. We must start without further delay.
31. A timid dog is dangerous. He always suspects ill-treatment. He tries to protect himself by snapping.
32. A husbandman had sown some corn in his fields. He had only recently done so. Cranes came to eat the corn. The husbandman fixed a net in his fields to catch the cranes.
33. The monsoon failed. The lands became almost empty. No grain could be sown. A famine was feared. The ryots looked anxiously for the next monsoon. It proved unusually abundant. The danger was averted.
34. The second class carriage is full. We may pay first class fare. We may not travel first class with second class tickets. That is forbidden.
35. He is a rich man. He did not earn his wealth. He does not appreciate the value of money. He squanders it.
36. He beat me in the race. He is a year older. He naturally runs faster. Next year I may do better.

37. The storm abated. The sun shone. The ship-wrecked mariners could see no sign of land. They were adrift in midocean.
38. Generally your conduct is good. You have been guilty of an act of folly. You will not be punished. I advise you to be more prudent in future.
39. I lost my way. I asked a policeman to direct me. He was new to his work. He could not help me. He called a gentleman passing by to my assistance.
40. The engine-driver saw the danger. He applied the brakes. The line was greasy. The brakes failed to act quickly. The train crashed into the gates at the crossing. The engine left the rails.
41. The rain fell steadily for several days. The river overflowed its banks. The terrified villagers abandoned their homes. They fled to the higher ground. Soon the floods retired. The villagers were able to return.

CHAPTER 14

SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES (Contd.)

Combination of two or more Simple sentences into a single Complex sentence

I. Subordinate Clause a Noun Clause

91. In the following examples the Subordinate clause is a Noun clause :-

1. You are drunk. That aggravates your offence.

That you are drunk aggravates your offence.

2. He will be late. That is certain.

It is certain that he will be late.

3. You are repentant. I will not forget it.

I will not forget that you are repentant.

4. He may be innocent. I do not know.

I do not know whether he is innocent.

5. He is short-sighted. Otherwise he is fit for the post.

Except that he is short-sighted he is fit for the post.

6. The clouds would disperse. That was our hope. Our hope was cheering.

Our hope that the clouds would disperse, was cheering.

7. The game was lost. It was the consequence of his carelessness.

The consequence of his carelessness was that the game was lost.

II. Subordinate Clause an Adjective Clause

92. In the following examples the Subordinate clause is an Adjective clause:

1. A fox once met a lion. The fox had never seen a lion before.

A fox who had never seen a lion before met him.

2. She keeps her ornaments in a safe. This is the safe.

This is the safe where she keeps her ornaments.

3. A cottager and his wife had a hen. The hen laid an egg every day. The egg was golden.

A cottager and his wife had a hen which laid an egg every day.

III. Subordinate Clause an Adverb Clause

93. In the following examples the Subordinate clause is an Adverb clause:-

1. Indira Gandhi died in 1984. Rajiv Gandhi thereafter became Prime Minister.
When Indira Gandhi died in 1984, Rajiv Gandhi became Prime Minister.

2. I waited for my friend. I waited till his arrival.
I waited for my friend until he came.

3. He fled somewhere. His pursuers could not follow him.
He fled where his pursuers could not follow him.

4. Let men sow anything. They will reap its fruit.
As men sow, so shall they reap.

5. You are strong. I am equally strong.
I am as strong as you are.

6. He was not there. I spoke to his brother for that reason.
As he was not there, I spoke to his brother.

7. We wish to live. We eat for that purpose.
We eat so that we may live.

8. He was quite tired. He could scarcely stand.
He was so tired that he could scarcely stand.

9. Don't eat too much. You will be ill.
If you eat too much you will be ill.

10. He began late. He finished first.
He finished first though he began late.

11. I shall come. My being alone is a condition.
I shall come if I am alone.

12. I must know all the facts. I cannot help you otherwise.
Before I can help you, I must know all the facts.

13. He is superstitious. He is equally wicked.
He is as superstitious as he is wicked.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

Exercise 96.

Combine each set of Simple sentences into one Complex sentence containing a Noun clause:-

1. He is wrong. I am sure of it.
2. You deceived him. That was his complaint.
3. The train will arrive at a certain time. Do you know the time?
4. All the planets except for Pluto travel round the sun the same way and in the same plane. I have often told you this truth.
5. He will waste his time. That is certain.
6. Where have you put my hat? Tell me.
7. He is short-tempered. I like him all the same.
8. Is it time for the train to start? Ask the guard.
9. It is going to rain. I am sure of it.
10. Something may be worth doing, It is only worth doing well.
11. He is a sincere worker. No one can doubt this fact.
12. He said something. I did not hear it.
13. How did you find that out? Tell me.
14. You have made a mistake. I think so.
15. Who wrote Shakuntala? Can you tell me that?
16. You stole the purse. Do you deny it?

17. I am very sorry. I cannot adequately express my sorrow.
18. We have been deceived. That is the truth.
19. How did Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose die? It is a mystery.
20. He will succeed. We expect it.
21. What have you done? Tell me.
22. We wished to know. We were going somewhere.
23. We were nearing some waterfall. It was evident from the distant roar of water.
24. A certain number of the enemy escaped. We do not know this number.
25. The two friends quarrelled. I want to know the reason.
26. He is a great orator. This fact cannot be denied.
27. Columbus made an egg stand on its end. I will show you his method.
28. I have seen this man somewhere before. I cannot remember the place.
29. He will arrive some time. I do not know the time of his arrival.
30. He distrusts his own sons. It is difficult to understand the reason.

Exercise 97.

Combine each set of Simple sentences into one Complex sentence containing an Adjective clause:-

1. The theft was committed last night. The man has been caught.

2. The French and Italian languages are different from the Latin language. Latin was once spoken in almost every part of Europe.
3. The time was six o'clock. The accident happened then.
4. You are not keeping good health lately. Can you tell me the reason?
5. He has many plans for earning money quickly. All of them have failed.
6. A lion was proud of his strength. He despised the weakness of the mouse.
7. The grapes hung over the garden wall. The fox saw the grapes.
8. That is the school. I was taught there.
9. You put it somewhere. Show me the place.
10. My travelling companion was an old gentleman. His name is Mr. Haq. I met him in Basra.

Exercise 98.

Combine each set of Simple sentences into one Complex sentence containing an Adverb clause:-

1. The nurse must be very tired. She had no sleep last night.
2. A gentleman may call. Please ask him to wait.
3. He ran so quickly. He soon overtook me.
4. I will get ready. Do not go till then.
5. He spoke in a very low voice. Nobody could hear him.
6. I wound my watch this morning. It has stopped.
7. It was very stuffy last night. I could not sleep.
8. The monsoon may break this month. Otherwise the wells will run dry.
9. I may help you. I may not help you. You are sure to lose the game.
10. The fireman came out of the house. The roof collapsed that very moment.
11. Success attends hard work. Failure attends bad work.
12. You must hurry. You will miss the train otherwise.
13. The delegates arrived. The discussion was resumed.
14. He is very old. He enjoys good health.
15. No more funds are available. The work has been stopped.
16. He saw me coming. He immediately took to his heels.
17. I may be blunt. I am at least honest.
18. He was contradicted. He was annoyed.
19. He bled profusely. He died.
20. This may be true of some. It is not true of all.
21. He ran quickly. He soon overtook me.
22. I had left home. Your letter arrived afterwards.
23. He saw us. He disappeared immediately.
24. He will not go out in the rain. He is afraid of getting wet.
25. The bandits fought desperately. They could not bear the idea of being taken alive.
26. The sailors cast anchor. They did so to prevent the ship from drifting on the rocks.
27. You make a good deal of noise. I cannot work.
28. We may sail to-morrow. It depends on the weather.

29. It is very simple. Even a child can understand it.
30. He was returning from school. He was caught in a shower.
31. Robinson Crusoe discovered the print of a foot on the sand. He was puzzled.
32. He finished the work. Just then the clock struck five.
33. He is being lionized. He still keeps a level head.
34. Why do you keep your eye on me like this? Have you turned detective?
35. We travelled together as far as Kolkata. We parted company there.
36. He is a rich man. No other man in our community is equally rich.
37. You may wish to do the work. You may not wish to do the work. You must still do it.
38. He was sick. He remained at home.

39. You have tears. Prepare to shed them now.
40. He may slay me. I will trust him.
41. He saw me. He ran away then.
42. He came to my house. I was out.
43. His father died. He has been very poor from that time.
44. He grew weaker and weaker. He died.
45. We take off our clothes. We go to bed.
46. He was hanged. He had committed murder.
47. All will respect you. Your being honest is a condition.
48. He is old. He cannot walk.
49. He won the race. He was the swiftest.
50. Life lasts a certain time. Let us be honest during that time,
51. The wolf is larger. The jackal is smaller.
52. Arjun is clever. His cleverness equals Rama's.

94. Carefully study the following sentences:-

1. He had read Milton. He had read it in a prose translation. He had read it when he was fourteen. He told us this.

He told us that he had read Milton, in a prose translation, when he was fourteen.

2. A bachelor may be surrounded with all sorts of luxuries. In spite of that he will always find his happiness incomplete. He must have a wife and children.

With whatever luxuries a bachelor may be surrounded, he will always find his happiness incomplete, unless he has a wife and children.

3. Pope professed to have learned his poetry from Dryden. Through his whole life he praised him with unvaried liberality. He did so whenever an opportunity was presented. Pope professed to have learned his poetry from Dryden, whom, whenever an opportunity was presented, he praised through his whole life with unvaried liberality.

4. Milton did not educate his daughters in the languages. He said that one tongue was enough for a woman.

Milton said that he did not educate his daughters in the languages, because one tongue was enough for a woman.

5. I sank into the water. I felt confused. Nothing can describe that confusion.

Nothing can describe the confusion of thought which I felt when I sank into the water.

6. We had in this village an idiot boy. I well remember that boy. From a child he showed a strong propensity for bees. This was some twenty years ago.

We had in this village, some twenty years ago, an idiot boy, whom I well remember, who from a child showed a strong propensity for bees.

Exercise 99.

Combine each of the following sets of Simple sentences into one Complex sentence :-

1. That is the man. He gave me a dog. It went mad.
2. Rama will not play in the match. The notion is foolish. He is the best player in the school.
3. I wrote the letter. It contained the truth. He praised me for it.
4. Honesty is the best policy. Have you never heard it?
5. He came to see me. He wanted to tell me something. His father was dead. He had been ill for a long time.
6. The horse has killed a man. I wished to sell it to you. The man was trying to steal it.
7. He took the medicine. He then felt better. It cured his headache.
8. He gave an order. He is obeyed. They fear to offend him.

9. The absence of the girl from her home was unusual. Inquiries were made. They led to no result.
10. Your conduct is very peculiar. I am unable to understand it. It has been described to me.
11. He played exceedingly well in the match. His team won in consequence. The match was played yesterday.
12. He wrote a letter. He wrote it for a certain reason. He wrote it to his superior. He told me about this.
13. I visited his garden. In it there were some beautiful rose-trees. The trees were full of bloom. These were red and white in colour.
14. He forsook his dishonest ways. No one would give him work. His dishonest ways had brought him to the depths of poverty.
15. He is sure to receive his pay. It is due to him. Why then does he worry?
16. He has very bad health. He lives very carefully. It is inexplicable to the doctor. The doctor has attended him for years. He told me this.
17. His servants disliked him. They flattered him. He was very harsh to them.
18. I carefully sighted the rifle. I did not wish to miss. A miss might have cost me my life.
19. The speed of the boat was remarkable. It was going against the current. It was going against the wind. These facts should be kept in mind.
20. He stole a book. It had the owner's name written in it. I was told this. The name was well known to him.
21. They had marched the whole journey at top speed. They wished to surprise the enemy. The journey was very long.
22. My friend is going to Europe. He has got long leave. His brother is already there. He wishes to become a doctor.
23. Rama will not play against the Hindu school. It has a very strong team. He has declared this to be his intention. He does not wish to tire himself before the cup-match. It takes place the next day.
24. The man talks most. That man does least. This very often happens.
25. A man did this. He must have been very strong. There is no doubt of it. Our father says so.
26. He paid a sum of money for the information. He paid it to a certain person. He paid it for some reason. I should like to know the sum, the person and the reason. I could then prosecute him.
27. They had the treasure in some place. The treasure was very valuable. The place was never discovered. They feared pursuit and capture. They hid it in a jungle.
28. He endeavoured to hide the traces of the crime. He had committed it. The reason is not difficult to see.
29. He had not learned to read and write. He was very ignorant. He could not even talk fluently. Such a man should not pretend to be a doctor.
30. The boy had many accomplishments. The father fully described a large number of these to the teacher. He wished to get him admitted to the school.

31. The jackal was pursued by the dogs. It was very hungry. They were well fed. It was caught.
32. He waited longer. He got more angry. He had ordered them to be punctual.
33. You may like it. You may not like it. In either case I shall send you there. It is my duty to do so.
34. Your father succeeded well. Would you like to succeed equally well? He worked hard. You must work equally hard.
35. You have failed. I am sorry to hear it. You deserved to pass. I think it.
36. You will be allowed to enter for the examination. Your working hard is a condition. The orders are to that effect. They were issued by the Principal.
37. Rama is more clever. Krishna is less clever. I think it. I judge by the results of the examination.

38. There is a will. There is a way too. This is generally true.
39. I heard the news. I went to the hospital. I wished to discover the extent of his injuries. The hospital is not far from my house.
40. You may please him. You may displease him. He will promote you sooner or later accordingly. This is only right.
41. You sow in a certain way. You will reap in the same way. The proverb says this.
42. You may look everywhere. There you will see signs of industry. These signs speak well for the prosperity of the people.
43. I have done much sword-play. The sight of a sword gives pleasure to a man like me. This is undeniable.
44. They played the game very skilfully. No one could have played it more skilfully. They had been thoroughly well trained.
45. He is an idle and careless boy. The report was to this effect. His father received the report. He was very grieved to receive it.

Exercise 100.

Combine each of the following groups of sentences into one Compound or one Complex sentence in any way you like:-

1. I offered him help. He needed help. He persisted in refusing help. I left him to his fate.
2. A famished traveller was toiling over the desert. He found a bag. He was highly delighted. He opened the bag. He found nothing but pearls.
3. Hundreds of men and women have travelled in space. Some have travelled in space for a few days. Others have done it for several months.
4. I was in Sri Lanka in May last. I visited Mihintale. It is regarded as the cradle of Buddhism.
5. Once an oarsman was rowing by himself. He did not look behind him. He met another boat. He crashed into it. He was upset.
6. A dog was running away with a piece of meat. He passed some deep still water. He saw there the reflected image of the meat. He dropped the meat into the deep water. He snatched in vain at the shadow.
7. A fox saw a crow sitting on a tree with a piece of cheese in his mouth. The fox praised the crow's singing. The crow was pleased by the flattery. The crow began to sing. The crow dropped the cheese.

8. A lion was proud of his strength. He despised the weakness of the mouse. He was caught in a net. He could not escape from the net. He was set free by the exertions of the mouse.

9. John signed. John was King of England. He signed a document called the Magna Carta. He was afraid of his barons. He did not care about liberty. He signed the document at Runnymede. Runnymede is on the Thames. It is not far from Windsor.

10. The train ran down the incline. The train attained great speed. The train turned a sharp curve at the bottom. The train oscillated under the influence of the brakes. The train threw all the passengers into a panic.

11. A half-starved mouse managed to creep into a basket of corn. The mouse rejoiced in his good fortune. The mouse fed greedily on the corn. The mouse tried to get out of the basket. His body was now too big to pass through the hole.

12. It would not be possible for any life to survive on Venus and Mercury. They are nearer to the sun than the earth. They are very hot planets.

13. A band of ruffians entered a village. The ruffians were well armed. They entered the village at night. Some of the ruffians were escaped convicts. The ruffians stole the cattle of the villagers. The villagers were asleep.

14. My fellow-traveller had a gun. He was boasting of his bravery. Suddenly a bear came behind a rock close in front of us. It stood in our way. It was growling angrily.

15. Mungo Park explored the interior regions of Africa. He was employed by the African Association. The undertaking was hazardous. He suffered many distress. Those distresses were often alleviated by the compassion of the negroes.

16. A lion was drinking in a clear pool. His stately mane was reflected by the pool. The lion saw the reflection. He greatly admired his mane. He was afterwards pursued by hunters with their guns. He was pursued through a thick wood. He then found his mane useless and of no avail.

17. The King ordered me to go to a distant village. It was not possible to disobey. I set off for the village. There I was mortified to find no one willing to admit me into his house. I was regarded with astonishment and fear. I was obliged to sit the whole day without victuals. A tree protected me against the heat and the sun.

18. The night was very threatening. The wind rose. There were heavy rain clouds. The wild beasts were numerous thereabout. To escape them it would have been necessary to climb a tree and sit among the branches.

19. The sun set. I was preparing to pass the night in a tree. A negro woman stopped to observe me. She was returning from the labour of the field. She perceived my weariness and dejection. She inquired into my situation. I briefly explained it to her. With a look of compassion she told me to follow her.

20. She conducted me to her hut. She told me to remain there for the night. Then she found me hungry. She procured from outside a fine fish. She caused it to be half boiled upon some embers. She then gave it to me for supper.

21. He had made war on Saxony. He had set the Roman crown upon his own head. He had become famous throughout the whole world. But his fame had not prevented his hair from becoming grey.

22. Augustus probably died a natural death. He was in his seventy-eighth year. He had been reduced to despondency by the disaster in Germany. He was traveling at an unhealthy time of the year. He had exposed himself imprudently to the night air. And all the other particulars are quite opposed to the poison theory.

23. This is not the least part of our happiness. We enjoy the remotest products of the north and south. At the same time we are free from extremities of the weather. Our eyes are refreshed with the green fields of Britain. At the same time our palates are refreshed with tropical fruit.

24. He was a man of haughty and vehement temper. He was treated very ungraciously by the court. He was supported very enthusiastically by the people. He would eagerly take the first opportunity of showing his power and gratifying his resentment. This might be expected.

25. Bonaparte was born a Corsican. He distinguished himself at school. He joined the republican army. He started as corporal. His bravery was remarkable. His mental powers

were great. He became the head of the army of Italy. He conquered Egypt. He set aside the republic. He was proclaimed Emperor.

26. He is now gone to his final reward. He was full of years and honours. These honours were especially dear to his heart for the following reasons. They were gratefully bestowed by his pupils. They bound him to the interests of that school. He had been educated in that school His whole life had been dedicated to its service.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

CHAPTER 15

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

95. The Sequence of Tenses is the principle in accordance with which the Tense of the verb in a subordinate clause follows the Tense of the verb in the principal clause. (Sequence is connected with the Latin verb sequor, follow.)

The Sequence of Tenses applies chiefly to Adverb Clauses of Purpose and Noun Clauses.

96. A Past Tense in the principal clause is followed by a Past Tense in the subordinate clause; as,

He hinted that he wanted money.

She replied that she felt better.

I found out that he was guilty.

He saw that the clock had stopped.

He replied that he would come.

I never thought that T should see him again.

I took care that he should not hear me.

They climbed higher so that they might get a better view.

I worked hard so that I might succeed.

There are, however, two exceptions to this rule:-

(i) A Past Tense in the principal clause may be followed by a Present Tense in the subordinate clause when the subordinate clause expresses a universal truth ; as,

Newton discovered that the force of gravitation makes apples fall.

Galileo maintained that the earth moves round the sun.

Euclid proved that the three angles of a triangle are equal to two right angles.

He said that honesty is always the best policy.

(ii) When the subordinate clause is introduced by than, even if there is a Past Tense in the principal clause, it may be followed by any Tense required by the sense in the subordinate clause; as,

He liked you better than he likes me.

He helped him more than he helps his own children.

I then saw him oftener than I see him now.

He valued his friendship more than he values mine.

97. A Present or Future Tense in the principal clause may be followed by any Tense required by the sense; as,

He thinks that she is there.

He thinks that she was there.

He thinks that she will be there.

He will think that she is there.

He will think that she was there.

He will think that she will be there.

But in sentences where the subordinate clause denotes purpose, if the verb in the principal clause is Present or Future the verb in the subordinate clause must be Present; as,

I eat so that I may live.

I shall nurse him so that he may live.

Exercise 101

Insert the correct tense of verb in the following:-

1. I waited for my friend until he ---. (To come.)
2. So long as the rain ---, I stayed at home. (To continue)
3. I did not know it until you ---. (To speak.)
4. He speaks as one who ---. (To know.)
5. He ran as quickly as he ---. (Can or could?)
6. He went where he --- find work. (Can or could?)
7. Wherever there is coal you --- find iron. (Will or would ?)
8. He behaves as one --- expect him to do.

9. He ran away because he --- afraid. (To be)
10. He fled where his pursuers --- not follow. (Can or could?)
11. As he --- not there, I spoke to his brother. (To be.)
12. The notice was published in order that all --- know the facts. (May or might?)
13. He was so tired that he --- scarcely stand. (Can or could?)
14. You make such a noise that I --- not work. (Can or could?)
15. He finished first though he --- late. (To begin.)
16. His health has improved since he --- India. (To leave)
17. As soon as he --- the news he wrote to me. (To hear)
18. After the shower --- over, the sun shone out again. (To be)
19. Whenever we --- we talk of old times. (To meet)
20. Answer the first question before you --- further. (to proceed.)
21. Just as he --- the room the clock struck. (To enter.)
22. Now that we --- safe we stopped to take breath. (To feel.)
23. Wherever he --- the people gathered to listen. (To preach.)
24. He speaks as though he --- very angry. (To be.)
25. He ran because he --- in a hurry. (To be.)
26. I do it because I --- to. (To choose.)
27. He advanced as far as he ---. (To dare.)
28. He lost more than he --- afford. (Can or could?)
29. He eats as much as he ---. (Can or could?)
30. He rode as swiftly as he ---. (Can or could?)
31. He locked the papers up so that they --- be safe. (May or might?)
32. He walked as though he --- slightly lame. (To be.)
33. He stayed at home because he --- feeling ill, (To be.)
34. I forgive you since you ---. (To repent.)
35. He labours hard so that he --- become rich. (May or might?)
36. We shall wait here until you ---. (To come.)
37. He rested his horse, for it ---. (To limp.)
38. You may sit wherever you ---. (To like.)
39. He went to Kolkata that he --- find work. (May or might?)
40. I would die before I ---. (To lie).
41. They come to see us as often as they ---. (Can or could?)
42. I studied hard in order that I --- succeed. (May or might?)
43. He so hard that he is certain to succeed. (To work.)
44. She told me that she --- come. (Will or would?)
45. He would succeed if he ---. (To try.)
46. I asked him what --- I do. (Can or could?)
47. He came oftener than we ---. (To expect.)
48. I would not attempt it if you --- me, (To ask.)
49. He walked so fast than I --- not overtake him. (Can or could?)

Exercise 102.

Fill in the blanks with an appropriate auxiliary (Remember to observe the sequence offenses.)

1. He died so that he --- save the flag.
2. They erected signposts in order that the road --- be known.
3. We eat so that we --- live.
4. Even if he paid me to do so, I --- not live in his house.
5. You --- go only if you have permission.
6. On the understanding that you return soon, you --- go out.
7. A bridge was built in order that the dangerous ferry --- be avoided.
8. He begs from door to door that he --- keep body and soul together.
9. He was so tired that he --- scarcely stand.
10. he went to England in order he --- become a barrister.

11. You make such a noise that I --- not work.
12. He asked again whether supper --- be ready soon.
13. In order that he --- learn the language quickly, he engaged a teacher.
14. He said that he --- do it.
15. The thieves stole whatever they --- find in the house.
16. He begged that we --- pardon him.
17. I wished that I --- come earlier.
18. He said that he --- try again.
19. He worked hard so that he --- win the prize.
20. We ran so that we --- arrive in time.
21. He said that he --- give an early reply.

Exercise 103.

Supply Verbs in correct concord in the following complex sentences:-

1. They sold the house because it --- old.
2. He solemnly assured them that they --- quite mistaken.
3. I come home when it --- to rain.
4. The soldiers advanced when the bugle --- .
5. I asked him what his name --- .
6. He had a cow that --- enormous quantities of milk.
7. When the sun set he --- home.
8. He told them that they --- wrong.
9. I heard that there --- a disturbance in the city.
10. Could you doubt that there --- a God ?

CHAPTER 16

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

98. We may report the words of a speaker in two ways:-

- (i) We may quote his actual words. This is called Direct Speech.
- (ii) We may report what he said without quoting his exact words. This is called Indirect (or Reported) Speech.

Direct. -- Rama said. "I am very busy now."

Indirect. -- Rama said that he was very busy then.

It will be noticed that in Direct Speech, we use inverted commas to mark off the exact words of the speaker. In Indirect Speech we do not. It will be further noticed that in changing the above Direct Speech into Indirect certain changes have been made. Thus:

- (i) We have used the conjunction that before the Indirect statement. (The that is often omitted especially in spoken English)
- (ii) The pronoun I is changed to he. (The Pronoun is changed in Person.)
- (iii) The verb am is changed to was. (Present Tense is changed to Past.)
- (iv) The adverb now is changed to then.

Rules for changing Direct Speech into Indirect

99. When the reporting or principal verb is in the Past Tense, all Present tenses of the Direct are changed into the corresponding Past Tenses. Thus:-

(a) A simple present becomes a simple past.

Direct. -- He said, "I am unwell."

Indirect. -- He said (that) he was unwell.

(b) A present continuous becomes a past continuous.

Direct. -- He said, "My master is writing letters."

Indirect. -- He said (that) his master was writing letters.

(c) A present perfect becomes a past perfect.

Direct. -- He said, "I have passed the examination."

Indirect. -- He said (that) he had passed the examination.

Note:- The shall of the Future Tense is changed into should. The will of the Future Tense is changed into would or should. As a rule, the simple past in the Direct becomes the past perfect in the Indirect.

Direct. -- He said, "The horse died in the night."

Indirect. -- He said that the horse had died in the night.

99A. The tenses may not change if the statement is still relevant or if it is a universal truth. We can often choose whether to keep the original tenses or change them.

Direct. -- "I know her address," said Gopi.

Indirect. -- Gopi said he knows/knew her address.

Direct. -- The teacher said, "The earth goes round the sun."

Indirect. -- The teacher said the earth goes/went round the sun.

Direct. -- "German is easy to learn", she said.

Indirect. -- She said German is/was easy to learn.

The past tense is often used when it is uncertain if the statement is true or when we are reporting objectively.

100. If the reporting verb is in the Present Tense, the tenses of the Direct Speech do not change. For example, we may rewrite the above examples, putting the reporting verb in the Present Tense, thus:

He says he is unwell.

He has just said his master is writing letters.

He says he has passed the examination.

He says the horse died in the night.

101. The pronouns of the Direct Speech are changed, where necessary, so that their relations with the reporter and his hearer, rather than with the original speaker, are indicated. Observe the following examples :-

Direct. -- He said to me, "I don't believe you."

Indirect. -- He said he didn't believe me.

Direct. -- She said to him, "I don't believe you."

Indirect. -- She said she didn't believe him.

Direct. -- I said to him, "I don't believe you."

Indirect. -- I said I didn't believe him.

Direct. -- I said to you, "I don't believe you."

Indirect. -- I said I didn't believe you.

102. Words expressing nearness in time or place are generally changed into words expressing distance. Thus :-

now -- becomes -- then

here -- becomes -- there

ago -- becomes -- before

thus -- becomes -- so

today -- becomes -- that day

tomorrow -- becomes -- the next day

yesterday -- becomes -- the day before

last night -- becomes -- the night before

Direct. -- He says, "I am glad to be here this evening."

Indirect. -- He says that he was glad to be there that evening.

The changes do not occur if the speech is reported during the same period or at the same place ; e.g.,

Direct. -- He said, "I am glad to be here this evening."

Indirect. -- He said that he was glad to be there that evening.

103. Similarly, this and these are changed to that and those unless the thing pointed out is near at hand at the time of reporting the speech.

A work from S, CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

Questions

104. In reporting questions the Indirect Speech is introduced by some such verbs as asked, inquired, etc.

When the question is not introduced by an interrogative word, the reporting verb is followed by whether or if.

Direct. -- He said to me, "What are you doing ?"

Indirect. -- He asked me what I was doing.

Direct. -- "Where do you live?" asked the stranger.

Indirect. -- The stranger enquired where I lived.

Direct. -- The policeman said to us, "Where are you going ?"

Indirect. -- The policeman enquired where we were going.

Direct. -- He said, "Will you listen to such a man?"

Indirect. -- He asked them whether they would listen to such a man.

[Or] Would they, he asked, listen to such a man ?

Direct. -- "Do you suppose you know better than your own father?"
jeered his angry mother.

Indirect. -- His angry mother jeered and asked whether he supposed that he knew better than his own father.

Commands and Requests

105. In reporting commands and requests, the Indirect Speech is introduced by some verb expressing command or request, and the imperative mood is changed into the Infinitive.

Direct. -- Rama said to Arjun, "Go away."

Indirect. -- Rama ordered Arjun to go away.

Direct. -- He said to him, "Please wait here till I return."

Indirect. -- He requested him to wait there till he returned.

Direct. -- "Call the first witness," said the judge.

Indirect. -- The judge commanded them to call the first witness.

Direct. -- He shouted, "Let me go."

Indirect. -- He shouted to them to let him go.

Direct. -- He said, "Be quiet and listen to my words."

Indirect. -- He urged them to be quiet and listen to his words.

Exclamations and Wishes

106. In reporting exclamations and wishes the Indirect Speech is introduced by some verb expressing exclamation or wish.

Direct. -- He said, "Alas! I am undone."

Indirect. -- He exclaimed sadly that he was undone.

Direct. -- Alice said, "How clever I am!"

Indirect. -- Alice exclaimed that she was very clever.

Direct. -- He said, "Bravo! You have done well."

Indirect. -- He applauded him, saying that he had done well.

Direct. -- "So help me, Heaven!" he cried, "I will never steal again."

Indirect. -- He called upon Heaven to witness his resolve never to steal again.

Exercise 104.

Turn the following into Indirect Speech:-

1. He said to me, "I have often told you not to play with fire."
2. "You have all done very badly!" remarked the teacher.
3. They wrote, "It is time we thought about settling this matter."
4. The teacher promised, "If you will come before school tomorrow, I will explain it."
5. She wrote, "I am waiting and watching and longing for my son's return."
6. The examiner's orders were, "No one is to bring books into the room nor ask me questions about what I have told you to do."
7. The dwarf said to her, "Promise me that when you are Queen you will give me your first-born child."
8. "That is my horse," said he, "and if I do not prove it in a few minutes I will give up my claim."
9. "I will avenge your wrongs," he cried, "I will not enter Athens until I have punished the king who had so cruelly treated you."
10. He wrote and said, "I am unable to come just now because I am ill, but I will certainly start as soon as I am well enough to do so."
11. One day he sent for Cassim and said to him, "You are now old enough to earn your living, so you must set off, and make your own way in the world."

Exercise 105.

Turn the following into Indirect Speech:-

1. "What do you want?" he said to her.
2. He said, "How's your father?"
3. "Are you coming home with me?" he asked.
4. He enquired, "When do you intend to pay me?"

5. He said to us, "Why are you all sitting about there doing nothing?"
6. "Do you really come from China?" said the prince.
7. The poor man exclaimed, "Will none of you help me?"
8. "Which way did she go?" asked the young Rakshas.
9. Aladdin said to the magician, "What have I done to deserve so severe a blow?"
10. "Don't you know the way home?" asked I.
11. "Do you write a good hand?" he said.
12. "Have you anything to say on behalf of the prisoner?" said the judge finally.

13. "Which is the proper way to answer this question, father?" the boy enquired.
14. "Have you anything to tell me, little bird?" asked Ulysses.
15. The young sparrow said, "Mother, what is that queer object?"
16. Then aloud he said, "Tell me, boy, is the miller within?"
17. "Who are you, sir, and what do you want?" they cried.
18. "Dear bird," she said, stroking its feathers, "have you come to comfort me in my sorrow?"
19. The Rajah was deeply grieved, and said to his wife, "What can I do for you?"
20. When the sun got low, the king's son said, "Jack, since we have no money, where can we lodge this night?"
21. She said to him, "What is it that makes you so much stronger and braver than any other man?"
22. When the Brahmin approached, the first thief said, "Why do you carry a dog on your back? Are you not ashamed?"

Exercise 106.

Put the following in Indirect Speech:-

1. "Bring me a drink of milk," said the swami to the villagers.
2. "Sit down, boys," said the teacher.
3. "Halt!" shouted the officer to his men.
4. "Take off your hat," the king said to the Hatter.
5. The teacher said to him, "Do not read so fast."
6. He said to me, "Wait until I come."
7. "Hurry up," he said to his servant, "do not waste time."
8. "Run away, children," said their mother.
9. He said, "Daughter, take my golden jug, and fetch me some water from the Well."
10. "Go down to the bazaar. Bring me some oil and a lump of ice." ordered his master.

Exercise 107.

Put the following in Indirect Speech:-

1. "What a rare article milk is, to be sure, in London!" said Mr. Squeers with a sigh.
2. "What a stupid fellow you are!" he angrily remarked.
3. He said, "My God! I am ruined."
4. He said, "Alas! our foes are too strong."
5. He said, "What a lazy boy you are! How badly you have done your work!"
6. "How smart you are!" she said.
7. He said. "Oh ! that's a nuisance."
8. He said, "How cruel of him!"
9. He said, "What a pity you did not come!"
10. "Ah me!" exclaimed the Queen. "What a rash and bloody deed you have done!"

Conversion of Indirect into Direct

107. The conversion of Indirect into Direct generally presents no special difficulties, as the following examples will show :-

Indirect. -- He inquired whether his name was not Ahmed.

Direct. -- He said to him, "Is not your name Ahmed?"

Indirect. -- As the stranger entered the town, he was met by a policeman, who asked him if he was a traveller. He replied carelessly that it would appear so.

Direct. -- As the stranger entered the town, he was met by a policeman, who asked, "Are you a traveller?" "So it would appear," he answered carelessly.

Indirect. -- She asked how she, a girl, who could not ride or use sword or lance,

could be of any help. Rather would she stay at home and spin beside her dear mother.
Direct. -- She said, "How can I, a girl, who cannot ride or use sword or lance, be of any help? Rather would I stay at home and spin beside my dear mother?"

Exercise 108.

Put the following in Direct Speech:-

1. He asked Rama to go with him.
2. Rama replied that he could not do so.
3. He asked his father when the next letter would come.
4. His father replied that there might not be another that year.
5. Rama asked me what had become of Hari.
6. I told him that I had not seen him for months.
7. The master requested that they would attend carefully to what he was saying.
8. I wrote that I would visit him next day.
9. He observed that he had never liked doing that.
10. I told them to be quiet.
11. He asked me if I had anything to say.
12. Rama asked Hari if he would change places with him.
13. He said that he was tired, and that he wished to go to bed.
14. An old mouse asked who would bell the cat.
15. John said that he wanted to be a soldier.
16. He asked me where I was going.
17. He asked me what I wanted.
18. Abdul said that he had seen that picture.
19. The boy said that he would go with us.
20. He said that the earth moves round the sun.
21. The stranger asked Alice where she lived.
22. I asked Mary if she would lend me a pencil.
23. He told us that he had waited an hour.
24. The lady inquired if he was now quite well again.
25. He said that he had come to see them.
26. He said that though he had come, it was against his will.
27. The speaker said that it gave him great pleasure to be there that evening.
28. He asked them whether they would listen to such a man.
29. He asked me if I would accompany him.
30. He ordered him to leave the room and forbade him to return.
31. The mother asked her boy where he had been all the afternoon.
32. Hari asked Rama if he had read the letter.
33. The King asked the philosopher whom he considered the happiest man living.
34. The magistrate asked the prisoner what he was doing with his hand in the gentleman's pocket.
35. The fox cried out to the goat that a thought had just come into his head.
36. He advised his sons not to quarrel amongst themselves, when he was dead but to remain united.

37. The lion told the fox that he was very weak, that his teeth had fallen out, and that he had no appetite.

38. He replied that he had promised to reward his soldiers and that he had kept his word.

108. Study the following examples, and in each case carefully note the changes made while turning from Direct into Indirect Speech:-

Direct. -- The Prince said, "It gives me great pleasure to be here this evening."

Indirect. -- The Prince said that it gave him great pleasure to be there that evening.

Direct. -- He said, "I shall go as soon as it is possible"

Indirect. -- He said that he would go as soon as it was possible.

Direct. -- He said, "I do not wish to see any of you; go away."

Indirect. -- He said that he did not wish to see any of them and ordered them to go away.

Direct. -- My teacher often says to me, "If you don't work hard, you will fail."

Indirect. -- My teacher often says to me that if I don't work hard I shall fail.

Direct. -- He said, "We are all sinners."

Indirect. -- He said that we are all sinners.

Direct. -- The lecturer said, "Akbar won the respect of all races and classes by his justice."

Indirect. -- The lecturer said that Akbar won the respect of all races and classes by his justice.

Direct. -- He said, "Let us wait for the award."

Indirect. -- He proposed that they should wait for the award.

Direct. -- "Saint George strike for us!" exclaimed the Knight, "do the false yeomen give way?"

Indirect. -- The Knight prayed that Saint George might strike for them and asked whether the false yeomen gave way.

Direct. -- "Curse it!" exclaimed the driver. "Who could have foreseen such ill-luck? But for accident we should have caught the train easily."

Indirect. -- The driver exclaimed with an oath that nobody could have foreseen such ill-luck. But for the accident they would have caught the train easily.

Direct. -- The general, addressing his mutinous troops said, "You have brought disgrace upon a famous regiment. If you had grievances, why did you not lay them before your own officers? Now you must first suffer punishment for your offence, before your complaints can be heard."

Indirect. -- The general told his mutinous troops that they had brought disgrace upon a famous regiment. If they had grievances, why had they not laid them before their own officers? Now they must suffer punishment for their offence before their complaints could be heard.

Direct. -- The traveller said, "Can you tell me the way to the nearest inn?" "Yes," said the peasant, "do you want one in which you can spend the night?" "No," replied the traveller, "I only want a meal."

Indirect. -- The traveller asked the peasant if he could tell him the way to the nearest inn. The peasant replied that he could, and asked whether the traveller wanted one in which he could spend the night. The traveller answered that he did not wish to stay there, but only wanted a meal.

Remark. -- It will be noticed that we have avoided the ugly phrases "replied in the affirmative" and "replied in the negative."

Exercise 109.

Turn the following into Indirect Speech:-

1. "Cheer up, mother, I'll go and get work somewhere," said Jack.
2. But the sea-god cried, "Do not be afraid, noble prince. I have taken pity on you and will help you."
3. "No," said the child; "I won't kneel, for if I do, I shall spoil my new breeches."
4. "What a horse are they losing for want of skill and spirit to manage him!" exclaimed Alexander.
5. Telemachus replied, "How can I drive away the mother, who bore me and nourished me?"
6. "Call no man happy," was the reply of the philosopher, "until he has ended his life in a fitting manner."
7. Then said the wolf to the fox, "Now either yield thyself as vanquished, or else certainly I will kill thee."
8. "I believe," said he, "that we are in this country among a people whom we like and who like us."
9. he said, "Take that bird away. Its gilded cage reminds me of my father whom I imprisoned."

10. "I have just one word to say to you," said the dealer. "Either make your purchase, or walk out of my shop."
11. "My hour is come," thought he. "Let me meet death like a man."
12. "Be not cast down," said Mentor, "remember whose son thou art, and all shall be well with thee."
13. Bhishma said: "Boys! boys ! remember you play a game. If it be Arjuna's turn let him have it."
14. "Friends," said the old man, "sit down and rest yourselves here on this bench. My good wife Baucis has gone to see what you can have for supper."
15. "Ah! you don't know what these beans are, said the man; if you plant them overnight, by morning they grow right up to the sky."
16. "How clever I am !" he said. "All my life I have been talking prose without knowing it."
17. "I am old and lonely," said she. "Hast thou no pity on my loneliness? Stay with me, my best son, for thou art yet more boy than man."
18. "I do not practice", Goldsmith once said; "I make it a rule to prescribe only for my friends." "Pray, dear doctor," said Beauclerk, "alter your rule, and prescribe only for your enemies."
19. He said: "Who are you to speak to me like this? I am the master. Why should I help you? It is your work, not mine, to draw the cart."
20. "I cannot hope to see these trees which I am planting come in perfection," said the duke, "but it is right for me to plant for the benefit of my successors."
21. "Are you angry, my friends," said the king, "because you have lost your leader? I am your king; I will be your leader."
22. Said an old Crab to young one, "Why do you walk so crooked, child? Walk straight!" "Mother," said the young Crab, "show me the way, will you?"
23. "Who are you?" said the Deer. The Jackal replied: "I am Kshudrabuddhi the Jackal. I live in this forest all by myself; I have neither friend nor relation."
24. One summer some elephants were very much distressed by the heat, and said to their leader: "We are absolutely perishing, for want of water. The smaller animals have bathing-places but we have none. What are we to do? Where are we to go?"
25. When the king saw him coming he said, "Pray who are you, and what do you want ?" The Rabbit said, "I am an ambassador from His Majesty Chandra - the Moon." The Elephant King replied, "Declare your errand."
26. A young Rajah once said to his Vizier, "How is it that I am so often ill? I take great care of myself; I never go out in the rain; I wear warm clothes; I eat good food. Yet I am always catching cold or getting fever."
27. "My sons," said he, "a great treasure lies hidden in the estate I am about to leave you." "Where is it hid?" said the sons. "I am about to leave you." said the old man, "but you must dig for it."
28. "How very well you speak French!" Lady Grizzel said. "I ought to know it," Becky modestly said. "I taught it in a school, and my mother was a Frenchwoman."
29. "What are you going to do with the tinder-box?" asked the soldier. "That's no business of yours," said the witch; "You've got your money; give me my tinder-box."

30. "My name is Noman," said Ulysses, "my kinsmen and friends in my own country call me Noman." "Then," said the Cyclops, "this is the kindness I will show thee, Noman; I will eat thee last of all thy friends."

31. "I am a dead man, Hardy," said Nelson; "I am going fast; it will be all over with me soon. Come nearer to me. Let my dear Lady Hamilton have my hair, and all other things belonging to me."

32. He said to the shoemaker: "You are a big blockhead; you have done the reverse of what I desired you. I told you to make one of the shoes larger than the other, and, instead of that, you have made one of them smaller than the other."

A work from S, CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

33. "I can extend no other mercy to you," said the Raja, "except permitting you to choose what kind of death you wish to die. Decide immediately, for the sentence must be carried out." "I admire your kindness, noble Prince," said the jester, "I choose to die of old age."

34. Her mother said, "You must go straight to your grandmother's cottage and not loiter on the way. There is a wolf in the wood through which you are going; but if you keep to the road he won't do you any harm/Now, will you be a good girl and do as I tell you ?"

35. Next morning at breakfast his wife said to him, "George, I think I can tell what is amiss with our clock." "Well, what is it?" he sharply asked. "It wants winding up," said his partner.

36. A fawn one day said to her mother, "Mother, you are bigger than a dog, and swifter and better winded, and you have horns to defend yourself; how is it that you are so afraid of the hounds?" She smiled and said, "All this, my child, I know fully well; but no sooner do I hear a dog bark, than, somehow or other, my heels take me off as fast as they can carry me."

37. Said a young mole to her mother, "Mother, I can see." So her mother put a lump of frank incense before her, and asked her what it was. "A stone," said the young one. "O my child !" said the mother, "not only do you not see, but you cannot even smell."

38. "What are you doing, good old woman ?" said the princess. "I'm spinning, my pretty child." "Ah, how charming ! Let me try if I can spin also."

39. "You say," said the judge, "that the bag you lost contained one hundred and ten pounds." "Yes, your honour," replied the miser. "Then as this one contains one hundred pounds it cannot be yours."

40. He answered slowly, "Alas ! my dear son, why do you ask the one thing I cannot grant you ? Your hands are too weak to rein those fiery beasts ; you do not know the path. Come, ask something else, anything but that,"

41. The speaker said, "I entirely object to the proposal. I object to it as founded on a wrong principle, and I object to it as highly inconvenient at this time. Have you considered all that this proposal involves ? Gentlemen, I entreat you to be cautious."

42. Kausalya said to Rama, "Do not desire, O my child, to possess the moon, because it is thousands of miles off, and it is not a plaything for children and no child ever got it. If you wish I will bring some jewels that are brighter than the moon, and you can play with them."

43. The hen bird was just about to lay, and she said to her mate: "Cannot you find me some place convenient for laying my eggs?" "And is not this," he replied, "a very good place for the purpose?" "No," she answered, "for it is continually overflowed by the tide." "Am I, then, become so feeble," he exclaimed, "that the eggs laid in my house are to be carried away by the sea ?" The hen bird laughed and said, "There is some considerable difference between you and the sea."

44. A cat hearing that a hen was laid up sick in her nest, paid her a visit of condolence, and creeping up to her, said: "How are you, my dear friend ? What can I do for you ? What are you in want of ? Only tell me. Is there anything in the world that I can bring you ? Keep up your spirits, and do not be alarmed." "Thank you," said the hen. "Do you be good enough to leave me, and I have no fear but I shall soon be well."

45. "Sweet child," he answered, "do not fret, for I can make you happier here than ever you could have been on the earth ; I will give you beautiful things to play with, which a queen would envy. Rubies and diamonds shall be your toys, and your plates shall be of solid gold. All the beautiful things you see, belong to me, for I am king of this rich underworld." But she only replied, "I was happy playing with the pebbles on the seashore, and I care only for the sparkle of the little waves on the shining sand. Here there are no flowers, no sun," and she wept anew.

PART II

CORRECT USAGE

CHAPTER 17

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH THE SUBJECT

109. A Verb must agree with its Subject in Number and Person.

Often, by what is called the “Error of Proximity”, the verb is made to agree in number with a noun near it instead of with its proper subject. This should be avoided as shown in the following examples:-

The quality of the mangoes was not good.

The introduction of tea and coffee and such other beverages has not been without some effect.

His knowledge of Indian vernaculars is far beyond the common.

The state of his affairs was such as to cause anxiety to his creditors.

If it were possible to get near when one of the volcanic eruptions takes place, we should see a grand sight.

The results of the recognition of this fact are seen in the gradual improvement of the diet of the poor.

110. Two or more singular nouns or pronouns joined by and require a plural verb; as,
Gold and silver are precious metals.

Fire and water do not agree.

Knowledge and wisdom have oft-times no connection.

Are your father and mother at home?

In him were centred their love and their ambition.

He and I were playing.

But if the nouns suggest one idea to the mind, or refer to the same person or thing, the verb is singular; as,

Time and tide waits for no man.

The horse and carriage is at the door.

Bread and butter is his only food.

Honour and glory is his reward.

The rise and fall of the tide is, due to lunar influence.

My friend and benefactor has come.

The novelist and poet is dead.

111. Words joined to a singular subject by with, as well as, etc., are parenthetical. The verb should therefore be put in the singular; as,

- The house, with its contents, was insured. The Mayor, with his councillors, is to be present.

- The ship, with its crew, was lost.
- Silver, as well as cotton, has fallen in price.
- Sanskrit, as well as Arabic, was taught there.
- Justice, as well as mercy, allows it.
- The guidance, as well as the love of a mother, was wanting.

112. Two or more singular subjects connected by or or nor require a singular verb; as.

No nook or corner was left unexplored.
Our happiness or our sorrow is largely due to our own actions.
Either the cat or the dog has been here.
Neither food nor water was to be found there.
Neither praise nor blame seems to affect him.

But when one of the subjects joined by or or nor is plural, the verb must be plural, and the plural subject should be placed nearest the verb ; as,
Neither the Chairman nor the directors are present.

113. When the subjects joined by or or nor are of different persons, the verb agrees with the nearer; as,
Either he or I am mistaken.
Either you or he is mistaken.
Neither you nor he is to blame.
Neither my friend nor I am to blame.

But it is better to avoid these constructions, and to write:-
He is mistaken, or else I am.
You are mistaken, or else he is.
He is not to blame, nor are you.
My friend is not to blame, nor am I.

114. Either, neither, each, everyone, many a, must be followed by a singular verb; as,

He asked me whether either of the applicants was suitable.
Neither of the two men was very strong.
Each of these substances is found in India.
Every one of the prisons is full.
Every one of the boys loves to ride.
Many a man has done so.
Many a man does not know his own good deeds.
Many a man has succumbed to this temptation.

115. Two nouns qualified by each or every, even though connected by and, require a singular verb; as,

Every boy and every girl was given a packet of sweets.

116. Some nouns which are plural in form, but singular in meaning, take a singular verb ; as,
The news is true.
Politics was with him the business of his life.
The wages of sin is death.

Mathematics is a branch of study in every school.

117. Pains and means take either the singular or the plural verb, but the construction must be consistent; as,

Great pains have been taken.

Much pains has been taken.

All possible means have been tried.

The means employed by you is sufficient.

In the sense of income, the word means always takes a plural verb; as,

My means were much reduced owing to that heavy loss.

His means are ample.

118. Some nouns which are singular in form, but plural in meaning take a plural verb; as,
According to the present market rate twelve dozen cost one hundred rupees.

119. None, though properly singular, commonly takes a plural verb (see § 132); as,
None are so deaf as those who wilt not hear.
Cows are amongst the gentlest of breathing creatures; none show more passionate
tenderness to their young.

120. A Collective noun takes a singular verb when the collection is thought of as one
whole; plural verb when the individuals of which it is composed are thought of ; as,
The Committee has issued its report.
The Committee are divided on one minor point.
But we must be consistent. Thus, we should say :
The Committee has appended a note to its (not their) report.

121. When the plural noun is a proper name for some single object or some collective
unit, it must be followed by a singular verb; as,

- The Arabian Nights is still a great favourite.
- The United States has a big navy.
- Plutarch's Lives is an interesting book.
- Gulliver's Travels was written by Swift.

122. When a plural noun denotes some specific quantity or amount considered as a
whole, the verb is generally singular; as,
Fifteen minutes is allowed to each speaker.
Ten kilometers is a long walk.
Fifty thousand rupees is a large sum.
Three parts of the business is left for me to do.

Exercise 110

In each of the following sentences supply a Verb in agreement with its Subject :-

1. To take pay and then not to do work --- dishonest.
2. The cost of all these articles --- risen.
3. The jury --- divided in their opinions.
4. That night every one of the boat's crew --- down with fever.
5. One or the other of those fellows --- stolen the watch.
6. The strain of ail the difficulties and vexations and anxieties --- more than he could
bear.
7. No news --- good news.
8. The accountant and the cashier --- absconded.
9. A good man and useful citizen --- passed away.
10. The famous juggler and conjurer --- too unwell to perform.
11. The Three Musketeers --- written by Dumas.

12. Each of the suspected men --- arrested.
13. The ebb and flow of the tides --- explained by Newton.
14. Ninety rupees --- too much for this bag.
15. The cow as well as the horse --- grass.
16. Neither his father nor his mother --- alive.

17. There --- many objections to the plan.
18. Two-thirds of the city --- in ruins.
19. The formation of paragraphs --- very important.
20. Man's happiness or misery --- in a great measure in his own hands.

CHAPTER 18

NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

123. Words like book, table, flower and apple are “countable nouns”: they are things that can be counted. Such nouns can have plural forms and are used with a/an.

Words like ink, milk, gold and wisdom are “uncountable nouns”: they are things that cannot be counted. Normally uncountable nouns do not have plural forms and cannot be used with a/an.

Note that the following nouns are usually uncountable in English: advice, news, information, furniture, luggage, work, business, weather, traffic, scenery, paper (= writing material), bread. Most of these are countable in Indian languages and therefore Indian students often wrongly use them with a/an and in the plural.

Wrong: -- He gave me an advice.

Right: -- He gave me some advice (or: a piece of advice).

Wrong: -- The sceneries here are very good.

Right: -- The scenery here is very good.

If you are thinking of one separate item or unit of an uncountable thing, you may say a piece of/a bottle of, etc.

a piece of advice,

a piece of work,

a piece/bar of soap,

a bottle of milk

124. The use of the Possessive (or Genitive) Case should be confined to the following :-

(1) Names of living beings and personified objects; as,

The Governor's bodyguards; the lion's mane; Nature's laws; Fortune's favourite.

(2) A few stereotyped phrases; as,

For conscience' sake, for goodness' sake, at his fingers' ends, out of arm's way, the boat's crew.

(3) Nouns of space or time denoting an amount of something; as,

A day's work, a hand's breadth, in a year's time.

125. When two nouns in the possessive case are in apposition the apostrophe with s is added to the last only; as,

This is my uncle, the engineer's office.

My brother Harry's watch.

For thy servant David's sake.

125A. When one noun is qualified by two possessive nouns both must have the possessive sign, unless joint possession is indicated.

The King and Queen's journey to India.

Huntley and Palmer's biscuits.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

126. Grammarians formerly recommended that the complement of the verb to be, when it is expressed by a pronoun, should be in the nominative case. Today the use of the nominative form is considered extremely formal and over-correct. We usually use the objective form.

It is me. (Rare: It is I.)

It was him.

127. The Object of a verb or of a preposition, when it is a Pronoun, should be in the Objective form; as,

Between you and me (not I) affairs look dark.

There is really no difference between you and me.

Let you and me (not I) do it.

Please let Jack and me go to the theatre.

Her (not she), who had been the apple of his eye, he now began to regard with something like distrust.

Him (not he), who had always inspired in her a respect which almost overcame her affection, she now saw the object of open pleasantry.

He has given great trouble to my father and me (not I).

128. A pronoun directly after than or as is usually in the objective case unless there is a verb after it. If a verb follows it, the nominative form is used.

He is taller than me.

Or: He is taller than I am. (More formal)

I swim better than him. Or: I swim better than he does. (More formal)

I am as tall as her.

Or; I am as tall as she is. (More formal)

The nominative form without a verb after it (e.g. 'He is taller than I') is old-fashioned.

129. A Pronoun must agree with its Antecedent in person, number and gender.

All passengers must show their tickets.

Every man must bear his own burden.

Each of the girls gave her own version of the affair.

I am not one of those who believe everything they (not I) hear.

130. In referring to anybody, everybody, everyone, anyone, each, etc., the pronoun of the masculine or the feminine gender is used according to the context; as,

I shall be glad to help everyone of my boys in his studies.

What pronoun should be used to refer back to anybody, everyone, each, etc. when the sex is not determined? Some grammarians recommend that the pronoun of the masculine gender should be used, as there is no singular pronoun of the third person to represent both male and female, e.g.,

Anybody can do it if he tries.

Everyone ran as fast as he could.

In present-day English, anybody, everyone, etc. are often followed by a plural pronoun (they/them/their) except in very formal speech or writing.

Anybody can do it if they try.
Everyone ran as fast as they could.
Each of them had their share.

131. The indefinite pronoun one should be used throughout, if used at all.
One cannot be too careful about what one (not he) says.
One cannot be too careful of one's (not his) good name.
One does not like to have one's word doubted.
One must not boast of one's own success.
One must use one's best efforts if one wishes to succeed.
Cannot one do what one likes with one's own?

It is better to change the form of the sentence than to keep on repeating one.

132. None is construed in the singular or plural as the sense may require; as,
Did you buy any mangoes?
There were none in the market.
Have you brought me a letter?
There was none for you.

When the singular equally well expresses the sense, the plural is commonly used; as,
None of these words are now current.
None of his poems are well known.
None but fools have believed it.

133. Anyone should be used when more than two persons or things are spoken of; as,
She was taller than anyone (not either) of her five sisters.

134. Each, either, and neither are distributive pronouns calling attention to the individuals forming a collection, and must accordingly be followed by verbs in the singular.
Each of the scholars has (not have) done well.
Each of the men was (not were) paid Rs. 20.

Neither of them was invited to the party. Neither of the accusations is true.
Either of the roads leads to the railway station.
He asked whether either of the brothers was at home.

135. Be careful to use who (Nominative) and whom (Objective) correctly.
There's Mr. Dutt, who (not whom) they say is the best portrait painter in the town.
Who (not whom) they were I really cannot specify.
I was the man who (not whom) they thought was dead.
He was the man who (not whom) they determined should be the next mayor.
There are some who (not whom) I think are clever.
There are many who (not whom) we know quite well are honest.

One evening of each week was set apart by him for the reception of whosoever (not whomsoever) chose to visit him.

Who (not whom) did you say was there?

Who (not whom) do you think she is?

They were a people whom it was not advisable to excite.

The student, whom (not who) you thought so highly of, has failed to win the first prize.

Whom do you wish to see?
Who (not whom) do you believe him to be?

Note that today whom is not usual except in formal English. Who replaces whom in spoken English.

Who did you meet?
Who are you going with?
This is the man who I talked about this morning.

As a relative pronoun who replaces whom only in defining clauses.

136. When the subject of a verb is a relative pronoun care should be taken to see that the verb agrees in number and person with the antecedent of the relative; as,

This is one of the most interesting novels that have (not has) appeared this year.

[The antecedent of that is novels, not one.]

He is one of the cleverest boys that have passed through the school.

One of the greatest judges that have ever lived laid this down as law.

It was one of the best speeches that have ever been made in the Parliament.

This is the only one of his poems that is (not are) worth reading.

[Here the antecedent of that is one. "Of his poems this is the only one that is worth reading."]

137. A definite word, as the antecedent of the relative pronoun which make the sentences easier to understand than is possible otherwise. Thus the sentence, "His foot slipped, which caused him to fall heavily," would be easier reading, and hence better, as ;
His foot slipped, and this caused him to fall heavily.

Similarly we should say :-

I went home for my umbrella, and this (rather than which) prevented me from being in time.

I gave him a sovereign, and this left me penniless.

He fell heavily, and this caused him great pain.

138. And which, but which - The relative itself fulfils the purpose of a conjunction; hence no conjunction should be placed before it except to join together two relative clauses referring to the same antecedent; as,

He possessed a sandalwood table which was of excellent workmanship, and which had been in his family for generations.

But the following sentences are incorrect:-

He has a wardrobe of wonderful carving, and which has been in his family for generations.

They wished me to drink with them, but which I declined.

Exercise 111

Fill in each blank with "who" or whom":-

1. I met a man today --- I had just heard was on the continent.
2. Any of you may take it; I don't care ---.
3. --- did you give that letter to?

4. The man --- I thought was my friend deceived me.
5. There was no doubt as to --- the speaker meant.
6. The vacancy was filled by Mr. Rao --- the manager said ought to be promoted.
7. The vacancy was filled by Mr. Rao --- the manager thought worthy of promotion.
8. It is Sohrab I think is the better of the two at swimming.
9. Ali was the man they intended should be our captain next year.
10. --- do you think is the better of the two at tennis?
11. Enoch Arden, ---, his wife thought, had died many years before, suddenly reappeared.
12. The boy I trusted proved worthy of my confidence.
13. --- do you take me for?
14. --- are you speaking to?
15. --- do men declare me to be?
16. A boy --- I believed to be him just passed this way.
17. I --- am most concerned, was not consulted.
18. The man --- you wished to see is here.
19. Where is the boy about --- you were speaking?

Exercise 112

Correct the following sentences:-

1. Where are jour luggages?
2. What beautiful sceneries!
3. Can you give me an advice?
4. He has eaten two breads.
5. I have an important work to do.
6. What an awful weather!

Exercise 113

Tell which of the italicized forms is right, and give the reason:-

1. She is one of the best mothers that (has or have) ever lived.
2. You are not the first man that (has or have) been deceived by appearances.
3. One of his many good traits that (comes or come) to my mind was his modesty.
4. This is one of the things that (kills or kill) ambition.
5. Treasure Island is one of the best pirate stories that (was or were) ever written.
6. Ambition is one of those passions that (is or are) never satisfied.
7. This is one of the songs that (was or were) most popular.
8. We lament the excessive delicacy of his ideas, which (prevents or prevent) one from grasping them.
9. Tyranny is one of those evils which (tends or tend) to perpetuate (itself or themselves).

Exercise 114

Fill in the blanks:-

1. All failed except ---. (he, him)
2. That is a matter between you and ---. (I, me)
3. Leave Nell and --- to toil alone. (I, me)

4. It is not --- who are to blame, (we, us)
5. You and --- are invited to tea this morning. (I, me)
6. Between you and ---, he drinks heavily. (I, me)

139. Sometimes a Pronoun is inserted where it is not required; as:
The applicant, being a householder, he is entitled to a vote. (Incorrect)

Here the pronoun he is not required.

140. A noun or pronoun in the Possessive case should not be used as the antecedent to a relative pronoun; as,

Do not forget his enthusiasm who brought this movement so far. (Incorrect)

Change the construction to:-

Do not forget the enthusiasm of him who brought this movement so far. (Correct).

141. The relative pronoun is sometimes wrongly omitted when it is the Subject of the clause; as,

He has an impudence would carry him through anything. (Incorrect)

Say:

He has an impudence that would carry him through anything. (Correct)

142. When the antecedent is same, the consequent should be as or that.

That is the same man that (or as) we saw yesterday. I played with the same bat that you did.

143. Pronouns of the third person plural should not be used as antecedents to who and that; as,

They that are whole have no need of a physician. Here those is to be preferred to they.

144. Avoid the use of same as a substitute for the personal pronoun.

When you have examined these patterns please return them (not same) to us.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

CHAPTER 19

ADJECTIVES

145. The Adjective is correctly used with a verb when some quality of the subject, rather than of the action of the verb, is to be expressed; as,

The flowers smelt sweet (not sweetly).

She looks dainty.

That statement sounds queer.

It tastes sour.

He feels sad.

As a general rule, if any phrase denoting manner could be substituted, the adverb should be used; but if some part of the verb to be could be employed as a connective, the Adjective is required.

The ship appeared suddenly.

The decision appears unjust.

His friends now began to look coldly upon him.

He looks cold.

We feel warmly on the subject.

We feel warm.

He spoke angrily.

He looked angry.

146. The plural forms these and those are often used with the singular nouns kind and sort; as,

These kind of things.

Such a form of expression is, however, constantly heard and occurs in good writers.

Some grammarians insist that we should say:-

“This kind of things” or, better, “Things of this kind.”

147. The words, superior, inferior, senior, junior, prior, anterior, and posterior, take to instead of than, as,

As a novelist Jane Austen is superior to Mrs. Henry Wood.

Hari is inferior to Rama in intelligence.

The death of King Edward VII was prior to World War I.

He is senior to me.

148. In comparing two things or classes of things the Comparative should be used ; as, Of the two suggestions, the former is the better.

Of the two novels, this is the more interesting.

Which is the cheaper of the two?

He is the taller of the two.

This rule is, however, not strictly observed. In informal English the superlative is often used when we talk about one of only two items. We can use best, most interesting, cheapest and tallest in the sentences above.

149. When a comparison is instituted by means of a Comparative followed by than, the thing compared must be always excluded from the class of things with which it is compared, by using other or some such words; as,

He is stronger than any other man living.

[The sentence “He is stronger than any man living” suggests that the person referred to is stronger than himself, which is of course, absurd.]

Mussolini may be said to have done more for the unity of Italy than any other man.

The Nile is said to be longer than all other rivers in the eastern hemisphere.

The Taj is more beautiful than all other mausoleums. Solomon was wiser than all other men.

150. In a comparison by means of a Superlative, the latter term should include the former; as,

Solomon was the wisest of all men (not all other men.)

The crocodile is the largest of all reptiles.

The Amazon is the largest of all rivers.

Of all men he is the strongest.

151. Of any is often used incorrectly in conjunction with a Superlative; as,
He has the lightest touch of any musician.

This should be rewritten as follows:-

He has a lighter touch than any other musician.

[Or] No other musician has so light a touch.

152. A very common form of error is exemplified in the following sentence:

The population of London is greater than any city in India.

Say:

The population of London is greater than that of any city in India.

The comparison is between:

(i) the population of London and

(ii) the population of any city in India.

153. Double Comparatives and Superlatives are to be avoided, though their use was once common in English. Thus, we have in Shakespeare-

It was the most unkindest cut of all.

The following sentence is incorrect:

Seldom had the little town seen a more costlier funeral. [Omit more] But lesser (a double comparative) is used even by the best authors.

The lesser of the two evils.

154. Perferable has the force of a Comparative, and is followed by to. We must not say more preferable.

He has a scheme of his own which he thinks preferable to that of any other person.

155. Less (the comparative of little) is used before uncountable nouns, while-fewer (the comparative of few) is used before plural nouns.

However, less is also often used before plural nouns in informal English.

No fewer (or less) than fifty miners were killed in the explosion.

156. Certain adjectives do not really admit of comparison because their meaning is already superlative; as,

Unique, ideal, perfect, complete, universal, entire, extreme, chief, full, squire, round

Do not therefore say:

Most unique, quite unique, chiefest, extremist, fullest, But we still say, for instance:

This is the most perfect specimen I have seen.

157. Older and oldest, may be said either of persons or of things, while elder and eldest apply to persons only, and are besides, strictly speaking, confined to members of the same family.

Gladstone was older than Morley.

He will succeed to the title in the event of the death of his elder brother.

Patricia is the eldest of the Vicar's family.
Old Farmer Giles is the oldest inhabitant in our village.

158. The two first is a meaningless expression, for it implies that two things may be first. We should say "the first two."

The first two chapters of the novel are rather dull. The first two boys were awarded gold medals.

159. Few and a few have different meanings.

Few is negative, and equivalent to not many, hardly any. A few is positive, and equivalent to some.

Few persons can keep a secret.

A few words spoken in earnest will convince him.

Similarly little = not much; a little = some, though not much.

There is little hope of his recovery.

A little tact would have saved the situation.

160. Latter is often wrongly used for last. Use latter when there are two only, last when there are more.

Of the three, tea, coffee and cocoa, the last (not latter) is his favourite.

161. Verbal is often wrongly used for oral.

Verbal means 'of or pertaining to words'; oral means, 'delivered by word of mouth' not written. Hence the opposite of written is oral, not verbal.

His written statement differs in several important respects from his oral (not verbal) statement.

The lad was sent with an oral message to the doctor.

There are a few verbal differences in the two manuscripts (i.e., differences in words, not in sense).

The photograph will give the reader a far better notion of the structure than any verbal description.

Were your instructions oral or written?

162. Do not say 'our mutual friend.' The proper expression is 'our common friend'.

They were introduced to each other by a common (not mutual) friend.

We happened to meet at the house of a common friend.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

CHAPTER 20

VERBS

163. The subject of the sentence should not be left without a verb.

The following sentence is incorrect:

He who has suffered most in the cause, let him speak.

Recast as shown below:

Let him who has suffered most in the cause speak.

[Or] He who has suffered most in the cause should speak.

164. A verb should agree with its subject, and not with the complement ; as,

What is wanted is (not are) not large houses with modern conveniences, but small cottages.

The details are a matter for future consideration.

Our followers are but a handful.

165. In a compound sentence a single verb can be made to do duty for two subjects, only when the form of the verb is such as to permit of it; as,

Not a drum was heard, not a funeral note [was heard].

But the following sentence is incorrect, because the subjects are not in the same number:

His diet was abstemious, his prayers long and fervent.

We should rewrite it as follows:

His diet was abstemious, his prayers were long and fervent.

[In a sentence like this, Mr. Fowler regards the ellipsis as permissible.]

166. Two auxiliaries can be used with one principal verb, only when the form of the principal verb is appropriate to both the auxiliaries; as,

I never have hurt anybody, and never will.

No state can or will adopt this drastic measure.

But the following sentence is incorrect:

He never has, and never will, take such strong measures.

Rewrite it as follows:

He never has taken, and never will take, such strong measures.

167. When there is only one auxiliary to two principal verbs, it should be such that it may be correctly associated with both; as,

Ten rioters have been sentenced, and five acquitted. But the following sentence is incorrect:

Ten new members have been enrolled, and seven resigned.

Rewrite it as follows :

Ten new members have been enrolled and seven have resigned.

168. Carefully distinguish between the verbs lay and lie. The verb lay is transitive and is always followed by an object; the verb lie is intransitive and cannot have an object.

Lay, laid, laid.

Lay the child down to sleep.

I laid the book on the table.

The hen has laid an egg.

Lie, lay, lain Let me lie here.

He lay under that pipal-tree.

169. An Infinitive should be in the present tense unless it represents action prior to that of the governing verb; as,
I should have liked to go (not to have gone).
But we correctly say :-
He seems to have enjoyed his stay at Mahabaleshwar.

170. A common blunder is to leave the Participle without proper agreement or with no agreement at all ; as,

Sitting on the gate, a scorpion stung him.

Here the word "scorpion" to which the participle "sitting" refers grammatically is not that with which it is meant to be connected in sense ; in other words, the Participle is left without proper agreement.

We should therefore recast it as shown below :-

Sitting on the gate, he was stung by a scorpion.

[Or] While he was sitting on the gate, a scorpion stung him.

Now read the following sentence where the Participle is left with no agreement at all:

Being a very hot day, I remained in my tent.

Here the sentence contains no word to which the Participle can possibly refer. We should therefore write :-

As it was a very hot day, I remained in my tent.

171. Usage, however, permits in certain cases constructions like the following:-

Considering his abilities, he should have done better.

Roughly speaking, the distance from here to the nearest railway station is two miles.

Taking everything into consideration, his lot is a happy one.

It will be noticed that in each sentence the unexpressed subject is indefinite. Thus:-

Taking everything into consideration if one should take everything into consideration.

172. A present participle should not be used to express an action which is not contemporaneous with the action of the principal verb.

The following sentence is therefore .incorrect;

He sailed for New York on Monday, arriving there on Saturday.

Rewrite it as follows:-

He sailed for New York on Monday, and arrived there on Saturday.

173. The Subjunctive Mood is sometimes wrongly used for the Indicative. When the statement introduced by if or though is an actual fact, or what is assumed as a fact, the proper Mood to be used is the Indicative and not the Subjunctive.

Though the war is over, there is much discontent.

If he was there, he must have heard the talk.

But the Subjunctive is correctly used in the following sentences:-

Mere supposition -- If I were you [but I am not], I should agree.

If he were here, he would support me.

Though he were the Prime Minister, I would say the same.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

174. The verb make is followed by noun/pronoun + plain infinitive (= infinitive without to). Many students wrongly use it with the to infinitive.

She made the boy do the whole work, (not: to do the whole work.)

175. When used in the passive, make is followed by the to-infinitive:

The boy was made to do the whole work,

176. The following verbs are often wrongly used with the to infinitive: enjoy, avoid, miss, postpone, suggest. They should be used with the gerund.

- He enjoys swimming, (not: to swim)
- She avoids meeting people, (not: to avoid)
- We missed seeing the Prime Minister, (not: to see)

Note the following:-

1. Wrong: -- Suresh told to me about it.

Right: -- Suresh told me about it.

The verb tell is followed by an indirect object (me, him, her, etc.) without to.

2. Wrong: -- She told (that) she wouldn't come.

Right: -- She told me (that) she wouldn't come./She said she wouldn't come.

When used with a that-clause, tell takes an indirect object, while say does not.

3. Wrong: -- I want that you should meet him.

Right: -- I want you to meet him.

The verb want should not be used with a that-clause. It is used with the to-infinitive.

4. Wrong: -- I suggest you to apply for the post.

Right: -- I suggest that you (should) apply for the post.

The verb suggest should be used with a that-clause. It cannot be used with the to-infinitive.

177. The verbs discuss, describe, order and request are transitive verbs. Students often wrongly use these verbs with a preposition.

Wrong: -- We discussed about the matter yesterday.

Right: -- We discussed the matter yesterday.

Wrong: -- He described about the scenery.

Right: -- He described the scenery.

Wrong: -- I have ordered for three cups of coffee.

Right: -- I have ordered three cups of coffee.

Wrong: -- She requested for my help.

Right: -- She requested my help.

Exercise 115

Recast the following sentences:-

1. Being condemned to death, the scaffold was erected for his execution.
2. Born in Surat, a part of his education was received in Mumbai.
3. Observing the house on fire, the engines were sent for.
4. Being a wet day, I wore my makintosh.

5. Having gone to bed very late, the sun woke me at about nine o'clock.
6. Referring to your esteemed inquiry, the prices of the articles are as follows.
7. Standing on the top of the hill, the eye roams over the beautiful landscape.
8. Having failed in the first attempt, no further attempts were made.
9. Bearing this in mind, no particular difficulty will be found.
10. Travelling from Karjat to Khandala, the line is most beautifully laid.
11. Being his sole companion, he naturally addressed himself to me.
12. Crossing the channel, a heavy storm arose.
13. Hoping to hear from you soon, yours sincerely.
14. Calling upon him yesterday, he subscribed a handsome sum to the Famine Relief Fund.
15. Going up the hill, an old temple was seen.
16. Resting in cool shelter, the hours were beguiled with desultory talk.
17. Having obtained information, he was arrested for complicity in the plot.
18. Weary with travelling, the destination seemed a hundred miles away.
19. Meeting my friend in the park, he told me all the news.
20. Entering the room, the light was quite dazzling.

For a detailed treatment of the uses of the Tenses and Auxiliaries, see chapters 25, 26 and 32, Book 1.

CHAPTER 21

ADVERBS

178. Adverbs should be so placed in a sentence as to make it quite clear which word or words they are intended to modify. Hence Adverbs should come, if possible, next to the word or words they modify.

He had got almost to the top when the rope broke.

179. As a general rule, only should be placed immediately before the word it is intended to modify; as,

I worked only two sums.

Only Balu succeeded in scoring a century.

I praise him only when he deserves it.

In spoken English, however, it is usually put before the verb. The required meaning is obtained by stressing the word which the only modifies ; e.g.,

He only worked two sums.

180. The adverbs ever, never, scarcely, ever are often misplaced, as in the following sentence :

Quite the most remarkable article we ever remember to have read.

[Say : we remember ever]

181. Two negatives destroy each other. Hence" two negatives should not be used in the same sentence unless we wish to make an affirmation. We should say:

I haven't got any (not none).

I could not find it anywhere (not nowhere).

I have not got any (not no) paper for my exercise.

I can't see any (not no) wit in her.

Scarcely any one believes in such ghost stories nowadays.

(Not, No one scarcely believe)

Page 283.

182. Adjectives should not be used for Adverbs. We should say, for instance:-

He ate the sweets greedily (not greedy).

He will pay dearly (not dear) for his mistake.

183. Ever is sometimes misused for never.

We seldom or never (not ever) see those forsaken who trust in God. Such goods are made for export, and are seldom or never (not ever) used in the country.

Note:- Seldom or never and seldom if ever are both correct but seldom or ever is incorrect.

184. Else should be followed by but.

It is nothing else but (not than) pride.

185. The use of never for not is incorrect.

We met the other day, but he never referred to the matter. [Say :- he did not ever refer....]

Kipling was never born in London. [Say :- Kipling was not born]

I never remember having met him. [Say:- I do not remember ever having met him.]

186. Except colloquially, so as an adverb of degree must not be used absolutely (i.e., without a correlative.) We should say:-

He is very (not so) weak.

Cricket is very (not so) uncertain. I was very (not so) lonely.

187. That should not be used instead of so as an adverb. We should say :-

He went only so (not that) far.

He was so (not that) tired that he could scarcely stand.

He was so (not that) angry that he slammed the book on the table.

188. The adverb too means “more than enough” and should not be used instead of very or much. In the following sentences too is used correctly :-

The news is too good to be true.

My heart is too full for words.

The work is too much for any man to do single-handed.

He is too much exhausted to speak.

189. Of course is often loosely used for certainly, undoubtedly. Strictly speaking, of course should be used to denote a natural or an inevitable consequence.

Does she sing well? Certainly (not of course) she does.

Exercise 116

Correct the following sentences and state your reasons for so doing:-

1. It was bitter cold.

2. I couldn't help not laughing at the joke.

3. I never remember to have seen a more excited football match.

4. This novel is too interesting.
5. I haven't got any money.
6. My friend said he never remembered having read a more enjoyable book.
7. This hardly won liberty was not to be lightly abandoned.
8. I am much glad to see you.
9. No one can write as neat as he does.
10. I cannot by no means allow you to do so.
11. The flowers smell sweetly.
12. I don't know nothing whatever of the matter.

CHAPTER 22

CONJUNCTIONS

190. Except is not now used as a conjunction equivalent to unless.

I shall not come unless (not except) you need me.

Do not trouble yourself about writing to me, unless (not except) you are quite in the humour for it.

191. The use of without as conjunction equivalent to unless is now bad English.

Unless (not without) you apologize I shall punish you. I shall not go unless (not without) you do.

192. The adverb like is often wrongly used as a conjunction instead of as.

He speaks as (not tike) his father does.

But it is quite correct to say:

He speaks like his father. [Like is here a preposition.]

193. Directly should not be used as a conjunction where as soon as would in every way be better.

As soon as [not directly] the session of 1999 commenced, the Government was pressed to do something for the unemployed.

According to Fowler, "the conjunctive use of directly is quite defensible, but is chiefly colloquial."

194. The conjunction that is sometimes redundantly repeated; as,

He must remember that, although the first people in Europe would like his society, and place him on an equality with themselves, [that] none of them would either give or lend him a farthing.

195. Instead of repeating the conjunction used in the preceding clause, some writers have a trick of introducing a subsequent clause by that; as,

If I do not speak of them it is because they do not come within my subject, and not that they are lightly esteemed by me. [Use because instead of that.]

196. Scarcely should be followed by when, and not by than.
Scarcely had he gone, when (not than) a policeman knocked at the door.

197. No sooner is followed by than, and not by but.
No sooner had he returned than (not but) he was off again.

198. The phrase “seldom or ever” is meaningless. We should say “seldom or never”
Such goods are made for export, and are seldom or never used in this country.

199. Say:

I gave no more than I could not help (not than I could help).

200. Examine the following sentence:-

This is as good if not better than that.

You will notice that as is omitted after “as good”.

It is better to say:

This is as good as, if not better than, that.

But the best way to correct the sentence is to recast it, thus:

This is as good as that, if not better.

201. Care should be taken, when using correlative conjunctions, such as either.....or,
neither.....nor, not only....but also, that they are followed by the same part of speech ; as,
He lost not only his ticket, but also his luggage.

But the following is incorrect:

He not only lost his ticket, but also his luggage.

202. Neither is followed by nor, not by or.

He washed neither his hands nor (not or) his face.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

CHAPTER 23

ORDER OF WORDS

203. In English, owing to the fewness of the inflexions, the order (or arrangement) of the words in a sentence is of the first importance.

The following is the usual order of words in an English sentence:-

(1) The subject usually comes before the verb; as,

The dog bit the horse.

The people rang the bell for joy.

(2) The object usually comes after the verb; as,

The horse bit the dog.

The King wears a crown.

(3) When there is an indirect object and also a direct object, the indirect precedes the direct; as,
Lend me your ears.

(4) When the adjective is used attributively it comes before the noun which it qualifies;
as,
Few cats Hike cold water.
I like the little pedlar who has a crooked nose.
King Francis was a hearty king, and loved a royal sport.

(5) When the adjective is used predicatively it comes after the noun; as,
The child is asleep.
The horse became restive.

(6) The adjective phrase comes immediately after the noun; as,
Old Tubal Cain was a man of might.
The tops of the mountains were covered with snow.

(7) The adverb is generally placed close to the word which it modifies; as,
Nothing ever happens by chance.
John is a rather lazy boy.
He worked only two sums.
He never tells a lie.

Note:- When an adverb is intended to modify the sentence as a whole, it is placed at the beginning of a sentence; as,
Certainly he made a fool of himself.

(8) All qualifying clauses are placed as close as possible to the words which they qualify;
as,
He died in the village where he was born.
The dog that bites does not bark.
People who live in glass houses should not throw stones.

204. The normal order of words in a sentence is sometimes altered for emphasis; as,
Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.
Monkeys I detest.
Money you shall have.
Blessed are the merciful.
Great is Diana of the Ephesians.
Great is the struggle, and great is also the prize.
Just and true are all Thy ways.
Fallen, fallen is Babylon! .
Silver and gold have I none, but such as I have give I unto thee.

205. Owing to faulty arrangement of words a sentence may be turned into perfect nonsense; as,
Few people learn anything that is worth learning easily.
He blew out his brains, after bidding his wife goodbye with a gun.
A gentleman has a dog to sell who wishes to go abroad.

It is, therefore, essential that all qualifying words, phrases and clauses should be placed as near as possible to the words to which they refer.

Exercise 117

Rewrite the following sentences, improving the arrangement:-

1. For sale, piano, the property of a musician, with carved legs.
2. He tore up the tender letter which his mother had written him in a fit of peevish vexation.
3. The captain took the things which the gods provided with thankful good humour.
4. Sometimes you will see an alligator lying in the sunshine on the bank eight feet long.

5. All the courtiers told the Queen how beautiful she was all the day long.
6. Mrs. Jeremy Daud was sitting with her husband on the steps of the hotel when Amy and Dulce came up, with her lap full of newspapers.
7. The man ought to be brought before a magistrate who utters such threats.
8. He visited the battlefield where Napoleon was defeated in his holidays.
9. He killed the sparrow which was eating some crumbs with a gun.
10. No magnanimous victor would treat those whom the fortune of war had put in his power so cruelly.
11. The constable said that the prisoner seizing a bolster full of rage and fury had knocked the prosecutor down.
12. A nurse maid is wanted for a baby about twenty years old.
13. I spent the three last days of my holiday in a chair with a swollen leg.
14. This monument has been erected to the memory of John Brown who was accidentally shot by his brother as a mark of affection.
15. In thirty-seven wrecks only five lives were fortunately lost.
16. The following verses were written by a young man who has long since been dead for his own amusement.
17. Many works must close if the strike lasts over the weekend owing to lack of fuel.
18. There will be a meeting of all boys who play cricket and football in the long room at 4 o'clock.

Exercise 118

Rewrite the following sentences improving the arrangement;-

1. These acts were pushed through Parliament in spite of opposition with but little modification.
2. The beaux of that day painted their faces as well as the women.
3. He saw countless number of the dead riding across the field of battle.
4. They only work when they have no money.
5. He refused to relieve the beggar with a frown on his face.
6. His body was found floating lifeless on the water at a short distance from where the boat was upset by a fisherman.
7. He was very fond of her; he thought of marrying her more than once.
8. It is proposed to construct a bath for males 99 feet long.
9. One day the bird did not perform certain tricks which had thought it to his satisfaction.
10. I have lately received permission to print the following tale from the author's son.
11. They left the hotel where they had been staying in a motor-car.
12. The Board of Education has resolved to erect a building large enough to accommodate 500 students three storeys high.
13. He spoke of the notion that the national debt might be repudiated with absolute contempt.
14. One of the combatants was unhurt, and the other sustained a wound in the arm of no importance.
15. Girl wanted for telephone of nice manners and appearance.
16. He repeated the whole poem after he had read it only once with perfect accuracy.

17. He was shot by a secretary under notice to quit with whom he was finding fault very fortunately without effect.
18. A clever judge would see whether a witness was deliberately lying a great deal better than a stupid jury.
19. I was rather impressed by the manner of the orator than by his matter.
20. He was driving away from the church where he had been married in a coach and six.
21. Stories have been related of these animals which are of an entirely fictitious

CHAPTER 24

IDIOMS

206. Idioms may be defined as expressions peculiar to a language. They play an important part in all languages.

207. Many verbs, when followed by various prepositions, or adverbs, acquire an idiomatic sense; as,

He backed up (supported) his friend's claim.

The present disturbances will soon blow over (pass off)

The police produced evidence to bear out (substantiate) the charge of murder.

You must not build your hopes upon (rely upon) his promises.

The matter has been cleared up (explained).

I readily closed with (accepted) his offer.

He is ready to dispose off (sell) his car for Rs. 1,20,000.

Rust has eaten away (corroded) the plate.

They fixed upon (chose) him to do the work.

My good behaviour so far gained on (won the favour of) the emperor that I began to conceive hopes of liberty.

The habit of chewing tobacco has been growing upon (is having stronger and stronger hold over) him.

Please hear me out (i.e., hear me to the end).

I have hit upon (found) a good plan to get rid of him.

About an hour ago I saw a fellow hanging about (loitering about) our bungalow.

These events led up to (culminated in) the establishment of a republic.

During excavations one of the workmen lighted upon (chanced to find, discovered) a gold idol.

During her long illness she often longed for (desired) death.

I could not prevail on (persuade, induce) him to attend the meeting.

For years I could not shake off (get rid of) my malaria.

I threatened to show him up (expose him).

All eyes turned to him because he was the only person who could stave off (prevent, avert) the impending war.

He is sticking out for (persists in demanding) better terms.

I must think the matter over (i.e., consider it.)

Train up (educate) a child in the way he should go; and when he is old he will not depart from it.

That fellow trumped up (concocted, fabricated) a story.

He seems to be well off (in comfortable circumstances).

Bear

Satish bore away (won) many prizes at the school sports.

The new leader has been able to bear down (overthrow, crush) all opposition.

His evidence bears out (confirms, corroborates) the evidence of the first witness.

In his misfortune God gave him strength to bear up (to keep up spirits, not to despair).

A religious hope bears up (supports) a man in his trials.

His evidence did not bear upon (was not relevant to) the inquiry.

I trust you will bear with (have patience with, show forbearance to) me a few minutes more.

Break

He broke down (failed) in the middle of his speech.

He broke off (stopped suddenly) in the middle of his story.

I gave him no cause to break with (quarrel with) me.

The burglars broke into (entered by force) the house.

Bring

- His folly has brought about (caused) his ruin.
- Idleness and luxury bring forth (produce, cause) poverty and want.
- He brought forward (adduced) several cogent arguments in support of his scheme.
- That building brings in (yields as rent) Rs. 7000 a month.
- Our teacher often tells us a story to bring out (show) the meaning of a lesson.
- The publishers have recently brought out (published) a cheap edition of their new dictionary.
- He found great difficulty in bringing her round (converting her) to his views.
- She brought up (reared) the orphan as her own child.

Call

His master called for (demanded) an explanation of his conduct.

New responsibilities often call out (draw forth) virtues and abilities unsuspected before.

Call in (summon, send for) a doctor immediately.

He called on me (paid me a brief visit) yesterday.

The old man could not call up (recollect) past events.

Carry

He agreed to carry out (execute) my orders.

His passion carried him away (i.e., deprived him of self-control).

His son carried on (managed) his business in his absence.

Many persons were carried off (killed) by plague.

Cast

The ship was cast away (wrecked) on the coast of Africa.

He was much cast down (depressed) by his loss.

Come

How did these things come about (happen)?

How did you come by (get) his purse?

When does the Convocation come off (take place)?

At last the truth has come out (transpired).

The taxes come to (amount to) a large sum.

The question came up (was mooted or raised for discussion) before the Municipal Corporation last week.

I expect he will come round (recover) within a week.
I hope he will come round (agree) to our views.

Cry

Men of dissolute lives cry down (depreciate) religion, because they would not be under the restraints of it.
He cried out against (protested against) such injustice.
The young author is cried up (extolled) by his friend.

Cut

He was cut off (died) in the prime of life.

You must cut down (reduce) your expenditure.

He is cut out for (specially fitted to be) a sailor.

His wife's death cut him up (afflicted him, distressed him) terribly.

Do

I am done for (ruined).

Having walked twenty miles, he is quite done up (fatigued, exhausted).

Fall

At last the rioters fell back (retreated, yielded).

At my friend's tea-party I fell in with (met accidentally) a strange fellow.

The measure falls in with (happens to meet) the popular demand.

The scheme has fallen through (failed) for want of support.

I am told the two brothers have fallen out (quarrelled).

It is said that the standard of efficiency in public service has recently fallen off (deteriorated).

In the second school-term the attendance fell off (diminished).

Get

- His friends expected that he would get off (escape) with a fine.
- It is hard to get on with (agree or live sociably with) a suspicious man.
- The thief got away (escaped) with my cash-box.
- I can't get out (remove) this stain.
- The revolt of the tribal chiefs has been got under (subdued).
- The dog tried to get at (attack) me.
- He has got through (passed) his examination.
- They soon got the fire under (under control) by pouring buckets of water over it.
- You were lucky to get out of (escape from) his clutches.

Give

We are credibly informed that the murderer has given himself up (surrendered himself) to the police.

The doctors have given him up (i.e., have no hope of his recovery).

Soon after it was given forth (published, noised abroad), and believed by many, that the King was dead.

The fire gave off (emitted) a dense smoke.

The strikers seem determined, and are not likely to give in (submit, yield).

It was given out (published, proclaimed) that he was a bankrupt.

The horses gave out (were exhausted) at the next milestone.

The rope gave way (broke, snapped) while the workmen were hauling up the iron pillar.

He would not listen to me at first, but at last he gave way (yielded.) .

The Governor gave away (distributed, presented) the prizes.

Give over (abandon) this foolish attempt.

In his cross-examination, he ultimately gave himself away (betrayed himself).

Go

You cannot always go by (judge from) appearances.

It is a good rule to go by (to be guided by).

He promised to go into (examine, investigate) the matter.
Have you anything to go upon (i.e., any foundation for your statement)?
We have no data to go upon (on which to base our conclusions).
The story won't go down (be believed).
The concert went off well (was a success).
The auditor went over (examined) the balance sheet.
The poor woman has gone through (suffered) much.
I must first go through (examine) the accounts.

Hold

The rebels held out (offered resistance) for about a month.
He holds out (gives) no promise of future prospects.
They were held up (stopped on the highway and robbed) by bandits.
The subject is held over (deferred, postponed) till next meeting.

Keep

A few boys were kept in (confined after school-hours).
I was kept in (confined to the house) by a bad cold.
They kept up (carried on) a long conversation.
Little disputes and quarrels are chiefly kept up (maintained) by those who have nothing else to do.
He is trying his best to keep up (maintain) the reputation of his family.
The rubber syndicate keeps up (maintains) the price.
She kept on (continued) talking.
I shall keep back (conceal) nothing from you.

Knock

He has knocked about (wandered about) the world a great deal.
The dressing-table was knocked down (sold at an auction) for Rs. 900.
We were greatly knocked up (exhausted) after our steep climb.

Lay

The rebels laid down (surrendered) their arms.
He had laid out (invested) a large sum in railway shares.
Foolish people, who do not lay out (spend) their money carefully, soon come, to grief.
He is laid up (confined to his bed) with fever.
He resolved to lay by (save for future needs) a part of his income.

Let

I was let into (made acquainted with) her secret.
This being his first offence he was let off (punished leniently) with a fine.

Look

His uncle looks after (takes care of) him.

He looks down upon (despises) his poor cousins.

Look up (search for) the word in the dictionary.

The old man is looking forward to (expecting with pleasure) the visit of his grandchildren.

I will look into (investigate) the matter.

I look on (regard) him as my son.

Some look to (rely on) legislation to hasten the progress of social reforms.

Look to (be careful about) your manners.

Prices of piece-goods are looking up (rising).

His friends look up to (respect) him.
He will not look at (i.e., will reject) your offer.

Make

Contentment makes for (conduces to) happiness.
He made over (presented, gave in charity) his bungalow to the Islam Orphanage.
I cannot make out (discover) the meaning of this verse.
I cannot make out (read, decipher) his handwriting.
You have failed to make out (prove) your case.
Some time ago the two brothers quarrelled, but they have now made it up (become reconciled).

Pass

He generally passed by (overlooked) the faults of his subordinates.
The crew of the boat passed through (underwent) terrible sufferings.
He passed himself off as (pretended to be) a nobleman.
He passes for (is regarded as) a great Pundit.

Pick

- The Committee picked out (selected) the best players for the team.
- He lost twenty pounds in sickness, but is now picking up (regaining or recovering health).

Pull

Unless we pull together (co-operate, work together in harmony) we cannot succeed.
My cousin pulled through (passed with difficulty) the examination.
The doctor says the patient will pull through (recover from his illness).
It is far easier to pull down (demolish) than to build up.
He was pulled up (scolded, rebuked) by the President

Put

He puts on (assumes) an air of dignity.
Please put out (extinguish) the light.
He was put out (vexed, annoyed) when I refused his request for a loan.
The plaintiff was put out (disconcerted) when the suit was dismissed.
He tried to put me off (evade me, satisfy me) with promises.
He has put in (made, sent in) a claim for compensation.
While travelling I had to put up with (endure) a good deal of discomfort.
I cannot put up with (tolerate) his insolence.
They put him up to (incited him to) mischief.
I am sorry to put you to (give you) so much trouble.
He put off (postponed) his departure for a week.
The measure was put through (passed) without opposition.

Run

On account of overwork he is run down (enfeebled).

He always runs down (disparages) his rivals.

The lease of our premises has run out (expired, come to an end).

He has run through (squandered away) his fortune.

The tailor's bill has run up to (amounted to) a large amount.

He has run into (incurred) debt.

Recently my expenses have run up (increased) considerably.
The cistern is running over (overflowing).

See

I saw through (detected) the trick.
It is hard to see into (discern) his motive.
His friends were present at the station to see him off (witness his departure) .

Set

The High Court set aside (annulled) the decree of the lower court.
He immediately set about (took steps towards) organizing the department.
He set off (started) for Peshawar early this morning.
The frame sets off the picture (i.e., enhances its beauty by contrast).
He has set up (started business) as a banker.
I have enough capital to set me up (establish myself) in trade.
He hired a palatial bungalow and set up for (pretended to be) a millionaire.
I was obliged to set him down (snub him).
You may set down (charge) his loss to me.
Who set you on (instigated you) to do it?
These seats are set apart (reserved) for ladies.
In his speech on prohibition, he set forth (explained, made known) his views at length.
The robbers set upon (attacked) the defenceless travellers.
Winter in England sets in (begins) about December.

Speak

In Mumbai there is no free library to speak of (worth mentioning).
I was determined to speak out (express my opinion freely).

Stand

They are determined to stand up for (vindicate, maintain) their rights.
Let this matter stand over (be deferred or postponed) for the present.
It is hard but I think I can stand it out (endure it to the end without yielding).
He is always standing up for (championing the cause of) the weak and oppressed.
We shall be formidable if we stand by (support) one another.

Strike

He is struck down with (attacked by) paralysis.
The Medical Council struck off (removed) his name from the register of medical practitioners.
While we were planning a family picnic, my sister struck in (interrupted) with the suggestion that we invite our neighbour's children as well.

Take

The piano takes up (occupies) too much room.

It would take up (occupy) too much time to tell you the whole story.

He takes after (resembles) his father.

At present I am reading the Essays of Bacon, but it is sometimes difficult to take in (comprehend, understand) his meaning.

Recently he has taken to (become addicted to) opium eating.

Talk

We talked over (discussed) the matter for an hour.

I hope to talk him over (convenience him by taking) to our view.

Tell

I am afraid your antecedents will tell against you (i.e., prove unfavourable to you).
The strain is telling upon (affecting) his health.

Throw

- My advice was thrown away (wasted) upon him, because he ignored it.
- The bill was thrown out (rejected) by the Assembly.
- In disgust he threw up (resigned) his appointment.
- When he became rich he threw over (abandoned or deserted) all his old friends.

Turn

The factory turns out (produces, manufactures) 20,000 lbs of cloth a day.
If he is lazy, why don't you turn him off (dismiss him).
He turned out (proved) to be a sharper.
His very friends turned against (became hostile to) him.
Who can say what will turn up (happen) next?
He promised to come, but he never turned up (appeared).

Work

We tempted him with many promises, but nothing would work on (influence) him.
He worked out (solved) the problem in a few minutes.
He is sure to work up (excite) the mob.
He worked upon (influenced) the ignorant villagers.

CHAPTER 25

IDIOMS (Continued)

208. The student who studies the following selection of English idioms will notice that metaphor enters largely into idiomatic phraseology.

1

In spite of all his brag he had to eat humble pie (to apologize humbly, to yield under humiliating circumstances).
Take care what you say! You will have to eat your words (to retract your statements, to take back what you have said).
I am prepared to meet you half-way (come to a compromise with you).
It is silly to meet trouble half-way (i.e., to anticipate it; to worry about it before it comes).
This unexpected new difficulty put me on my mettle (roused me to do my best.)
This is of a piece with (in keeping with) the rest of his conduct.
He is not worth his salt (quite worthless) if he fails at this juncture.

The cost of living has increased so much that he finds it difficult to make both ends meet (to live within his income).

As a social reformer, he set his face against (sternly opposed) nautch parties.

At the battle of Marengo, Napoleon was within an ace of (on the point of) defeat (i.e., he was very nearly defeated).

2

The belief in witchcraft is losing ground (becoming less powerful or acceptable).

Lord Roberts first won his laurels (acquired distinction or glory) in India.

It was in parliamentary debate that he won his spurs (made his reputation as a politician).

When the prodigal returned to his father's house, he was received with open arms (with a warm welcome).

How can you trust a man who plays fast and loose (says one thing and does another) ?

I took him to task (rebuked him) for reading "penny dreadfuls".

He turned a deaf ear to (disregarded) my advice.

That argument will not hold water (stand scrutiny i.e., it is unsound).

He is determined to achieve his object by hook or by crook (by fair means or foul; by any means he can).

To all intents and purposes (practically, virtually) the Prime Minister of Nepal was the ruler of the country.

A work from S. CHAND & COMPANY LTD.

3

The singer, having a slight cough, was .not in voice (unable to sing well) at the concert.

These two statements do not hang together (i.e., are not consistent with each other).

This is more than flesh and blood (human nature) can endure.

He accepted my statement without reserve (fully, implicitly).

I must take exception to (object to) your remark.

He is indulgent to a fault (i.e., he is over-indulgent; so indulgent that his indulgence is a fault).

The belief in efficacy of vaccination is gaining ground (becoming more general).

From his attitude it is clear that he wants to pay off old scores (to have his revenge).

He has been working on and off (at intervals) several years to compile a dictionary.

He visits me off and on (now and then, occasionally).

4

At least on the question of child-marriage we are at one (of the same opinion).
He took my advice in good part (without offence ; i.e., he did not resent it).
It was he who put a spoke in my wheel (thwarted me in the execution of my design).
At an early age he made his mark (distinguished himself) as a chemist.
I have it at my fingers' ends (know it thoroughly).
The new play has fallen flat (met with a cold reception).
Where discipline is concerned I put my foot down (take a resolute stand).
It is a matter of gratification to me that he has turned over a new leaf (changed for the better; begun a different mode of life).
I have made up my mind (resolved, decided) to retire from business.
This puts me in mind (reminds me) of an amusing incident.

5

There's no love lost between them (i.e., they are not on good terms, they dislike each other).
Many people in that country live from hand to mouth (i.e., without any provision for the future).
Steady work is sure to be rewarded in the long run (eventually, ultimately).
Whatever else one may say of him, no one dare call in question (challenge, express a doubt about) his honesty of purpose.
The police came to the scene in the nick of time (just at the right moment, opportunely).
She stood by him through thick and thin (under all conditions, undaunted by anything).
His partner threw cold water on his scheme (discouraged him by showing indifference to it).
He can turn his hand to (adapt or apply himself to) anything.
The Sultan rules his subjects with a high hand (oppressively).
He is hand and glove (on very intimate terms) with my cousin.

6

He turns even his errors to account (i.e., profits by them).
He is accused of sitting on the fence (halting between two opinions, heistating which said to join).

It is all one (just the same) to me whether he lives in Mumbai or Kolkata.

What is the point at issue (in dispute) ?

The inquiry has brought to light (disclosed) some startling facts.

He is not fit to hold a candle to (not to be named in comparison with) his predecessor.

He burnt his fingers (got himself into trouble) by interfering in his neighbour's affairs.

I suspect the fellow lives by his wits (i.e., he has no settled means of subsistence but picks up a living by deceit or fraud).

He bids fair (seems likely) to rival his father as a lawyer.

He strained every nerve (used his utmost efforts) to get his friend elected.

7

When I saw him last he was beside himself (out of his mind) with grief.

He spent over it much time and energy, and lost a large sum into the bargain (in addition, besides).

When I entered the house everything was at sixes and sevens (in disorder or confusion).

Recently he has been giving himself airs (behaving arrogantly).

The attack might be launched at any time, so you must be on the alert (on your guard, ready to act).

Retrenchment is the order of the day (the prevailing state of things) in every public and private office.

In the manufacture of dyes the Germans bear the palm (are preeminent).

Agriculture in America has kept pace with (progressed at equal rate with) industrial activities.

This text-book of chemistry is quite out of date (obsolete).

This is the most up-to-date (modern, recent) book on the subject.

8

What you say has no bearing on the subject in hand (under discussion or consideration).

It speaks volumes for (serves as a strong testimony to) Dr. Johnson's industry that he should have compiled the dictionary without anyone's help.

Poor fellow! he is hoping against hope (hoping even when the case seems hopeless).

I am told he has got into hot water (into trouble).

Ultimately I got the better of him (overcame him).

He was found guilty, but, he got off easy (got a light sentence).
I wash my hands of the whole matter (i.e., I refuse to have anything more to do with it).
The situation seems to have got quite out of hand (beyond control).
It is said that he has a finger in the pie (has something to do with the affair, is mixed up in the affair).
That fellow sets everybody by the ears (i.e., he is a mischief-maker).

9

You have hit the nail on the head (said or done exactly the right thing).
Today he is in high spirits (cheerful, joyful).
How is that? You seem out of spirits (gloomy, sad).
Hello! my lad; you look as if you've been in the wars (hurt yourself).
I suspect he has an axe to grind (private ends to serve, a personal interest in the matter).
The news of Amir's death spread like wildfire (spread rapidly).
He took to heart (was deeply affected by) the death of his wife.
He was disappointed, but he took heart (cheered himself up) and tried again.
He has his heart in the right place (means well, is of a kindly and sympathetic disposition).
He is coming to the front (attaining prominence, becoming conspicuous) in public life.

10

He is not a great lawyer but he has the gift of the gab (a talent for speaking).
Prohibition is gall and wormwood (hateful) to distillers.
The strikers have thrown out of gear (disturbed the working of) many of our important industries.
Though he addressed his boys for a few minutes only, the earnestness with which he spoke went home to them (deeply appealed to them).
Just now he is simply coining money (making money very rapidly, earning large sums easily).
The screen is in character (in keeping) with the rest of the furniture.
He is not in the good books of (in favour with) his master.

I am afraid I am in his bad books (out of favour with him).

I am quite at sea (perplexed, at a loss what to do or how to act).

He does not understand that he stands in his own light (acts against his own interests, hinders his own advancement).

11

Although he denies it, I think he is behind the scenes (in the secret, in possession of facts not generally known).

You are sure to put your foot in it (to blunder, to get into a scrape) if you meddle in his affairs.

I begged him to reconsider his decision, but he put his foot down (remained firm ; refused to yield).

He asked me to dinner, but I had to foot the bill (pay for it).

We shall fight tooth and nail (with all our power) for our rights.

The property belonged to a Nawab, but recently it changed hands (became someone else's property).

He is by long odds (most decidedly) the greatest of living mathematicians.

The thief took to his heels (ran off) on seeing a policeman.

Our school is within a stone's throw of (at a short distance from) the railway station.

A few days before his death, he made a clean breast of (confessed without reserve) everything connected with that affair.

12

He stood his ground (maintained his position) against his adversary.

He keeps in touch with (has intimate knowledge of) the latest developments in wireless.

That is where the shoe pinches (where the difficulty or trouble lies).

I told him that I was prepared to show my hand (to reveal my plan of action, to let out my designs) provided he agreed to do the same.

The medical graduates to a man (i.e., everyone without exception) voted in favour of him.

He insisted on his orders being carried out to the letter (exactly, with adherence to every detail).

For a long time he kept his father in the dark (in ignorance) about the true state of affairs.

Success has turned his head (made him quite vain).

His star is in the ascendant (i.e., fortune favours him).

13

The scheme appears worthless at the first blush (at first sight). It was his constant prayer that he might die in harness (continue to the last in his business or profession).

He has too many irons in the fire (i.e., he is engaged in too many enterprises at the same time).

The Sikh soldiers were true to their salt (faithful to their employers).

The latest police report says that the situation is now well in hand (under control).

He was at his wit's end (quite puzzled, at a complete loss how to act).

What's the matter with him ? He is falling foul of (quarrelling with) everybody.

I am sure he won't go back on (fail to keep) his word.

The directors of the company put their heads together (consulted one another) to formulate a new scheme.

Do not give ear to (listen to) a tale-bearer.

14

So far as I could see there was nothing out of the way (strange, eccentric) in the behaviour of that stranger.

A spirit of unrest is in the air (prevalent, found everywhere).

The controversy is likely to create bad blood (ill-feeling, bitterness) between the two communities.

The rebels surrendered at discretion (unconditionally).

The letter is meant to be read between the lines (i.e., it has a hidden or unexpressed meaning, not apparent on the surface).

He was murdered in cold blood (i.e., not in the heat of passion or excitement, but deliberately).

Let us have your terms in black and white (in writing).

On the approach of a policeman the bully showed a clean pair of heels (ran away).

He has politics on the brain (constantly in his thoughts, as a sort of monomania).

This will suit you to a T (exactly).

15

His eldest son, a spendthrift, is a thorn in his side (a constant source of annoyance to him).

I smell a rat (have reason to suspect something).

I nipped his scheme in the bud (i.e., made it fail before it could mature).

What you propose is out of the question (not to be thought of, impossible).

The performance was not up to the mark (quite satisfactory).

The long and the short of it (the simple fact, the whole matter in a few words) is that I do not want to deal with that new firm.

I am told he is in the running (i.e., he has good prospects in the competition).

Now that he has nothing to fear from me, he is showing his teeth (adopting a threatening attitude).

He changed colour (turned pale) when I questioned him about his antecedents.

He had made a great mistake in championing their cause, but, having done it, he stuck to his guns (remained faithful to the cause).

16

This is the time to take stock of (to survey) the whole situation.

What's the good of entering into negotiations with a man of straw (a man of no substance or consequence)?

The election campaign is just now in full swing (very active).

He is not wise enough to keep his own counsel (to preserve a discreet silence, to be reticent about his opinions or affairs).

That young fellow was born with a silver spoon in his mouth (born in wealth and luxury).

It stands to reason (is quite clear, is an undoubted fact) that the rich never have justice done them in plays and stories; for the people who write are poor.

This suit-case has stood me in good stead (proved useful to me) in my travels.

You have taken the wind out of my sails (made my words or actions ineffective by anticipating them).

I took him to task (reproved him) for his carelessness.

I have a bone to pick with you (some cause of quarrel with you).

17

It will do at a pinch (in case of emergency, if hard pressed).

When the opportunity came I paid him back in his own coin (treated him in the same way as he had treated me).

Just now my hands are full (I am very busy).

It is generally believed that he had a hand (was concerned) in the plot.

Explorers in the arctic regions take their lives in their hands (undergo great risks).

Naturally he fights shy of (avoids from a feeling of mistrust, dislikes) his young nephew, who is a gambler.

All his schemes ended in smoke (came to nothing).

The police left no stone unturned (used all available means, adopted every possible method of search) to trace the culprits.

Later on he became unpopular because he tried to lord it over (to domineer over) his followers.

As he was growing old, his friends persuaded him to rest on his laurels (to retire from active life).

18

The champion will have to look to your laurels (take care not to lose your pre-eminence).

I am tired of hearing him harp on the same string (dwell tediously on the same subject).

His blood ran cold (i.e., he was horrified) when he heard that his friend was murdered.

I gave him a piece of my mind (scolded him).

The dog is as good as (practically) dead.

He was as good as his word (i.e., kept his promise).

The child was as good as gold (i.e., very good).

You will have to make good the loss (to compensate me for the loss).

He kicked up a row (made great noise or fuss).

He seems ill at ease (uneasy, anxious, uncomfortable).

19

The old man is hard of hearing (somewhat deaf).

It will go hard with him (i.e., he will suffer severely) if he keeps company with that fellow.

People say that Mr. X, the banker, is on his last legs (on the verge of ruin).

I can make neither head nor tail (nothing) of it.

You'll never get the better of (gain an advantage over) that rascal : with him it's always, 'Heads I win, tails you lose' (i.e., in any case he will be the winner).

By his advocacy of widow-remarriage, he stirred up a hornet's nest (excited the hostility or adverse criticism of a large number of people).

He made great claims for his discovery; but it turned out to be a mare's nest (a delusion, a worthless thing).

On the very first night she brought down the house (called forth general and loud applause) by her superb acting.

He is every inch (entirely, completely) a gentleman.

You have done the handsome thing by him (behaved towards him in a magnanimous manner) in accepting his apology and foregoing the claim for damages.

20

He proved his worth by rising to the occasion (showing himself equal to dealing with the emergency). For some days the new professor lectured over the heads of (above the comprehension of) his pupils.

He knows the ins and outs (the full details) of that affair.

He is over head and ears (deeply) in love (or, in debt).

Beyond all question (undoubtedly) she is a great singer.

You want to see him? Out of the question I (i.e., impossible).

The two friends agreed to differ (gave up trying to convince each other) after discussing the question for about an hour.

Since that day he has been in bad odour (out of favour, in bad repute) with his neighbours.

Intimate friends need not stand on ceremony (act with reserve, insist on strict rules of etiquette being observed).

He went out of his way (took special trouble) to oblige me.

21

I am afraid you two are at cross-purposes (misunderstand each other).

I trusted him and he played me false (deceived me, betrayed me).

He is a shrewd man, and it will not be easy to draw him out (to elicit information from him).

He made light of (treated lightly) his friend's warning.

The proposal was rejected with one voice (unanimously).

The figures which he quoted were shown to be incorrect, and this took the edge off his argument (made his argument ineffective).

We had on the way tea of a kind (of a poor kind, i.e., tea that scarcely deserved the name).

I repaid his insolence in kind (in the same way, i.e., with insolence).

Beware of that fellow ! he will stick at nothing (is unscrupulous and will do anything to accomplish his purpose).

He is not the man to pocket an affront (to receive or submit to it without retaliating or showing resentment).

22

I am out of pocket (a loser) by the transaction.

The fate of the accused hangs in the balance (is undecided).